

AS THE SUN ROSE OVER THE  
EASTERN MOUNTAINS:

ཉི་ཤར་གྱི་ཕྱི་མོ།  
晨光初曦

ENGLISH SHORT STORIES FROM THE  
TIBETAN PLATEAU

བོད་ཁུལ་ནས་བསྐྱུས་པའི་སྐྱེང་གཏམ་ཐུང་ཅུ་འགའ།  
藏区短篇故事

- ☐ If you already know the first 1,000 words of English, this book will be easy for you to read.
- ☐ You can study this book by yourself.
- ☐ The stories talk about real life on the Tibetan Plateau. The content is familiar.
- ☐ The book begins with a very short story. The stories gradually get longer.
- ☐ New vocabulary is repeated throughout the stories.
- ☐ This book has exercises to help you learn English. There are exercises to help you remember new vocabulary, study grammar, discuss the text, and share your ideas by speaking and writing.
- ☐ You can check the grammar answers in the text.
- ☐ You can check other answers at the back of the text.
- ☐ Teachers can easily photocopy the pages from this book and use them in class.
- ☐ Teachers can use this book as the main textbook for a course, or as a supplemental text for a regular English course.

གལ་ཏེ་ཁྱེད་ཀྱིས་ཧྲ་མོ་ནས་དབྱིན་ཇིའི་ཐ་སྐད་སྟོང་གཅིག་སྟུག་ཤེས་ཆོ། དཔེ་ཆ་འདི་ལྟོག་རྒྱ་ནི་ཁྱེད་ལ་མཚན་ན་ལས་སྐ་མོ་ཞིག་ཡིན། ཁྱེད་ཀྱིས་རང་སྟོང་གི་ཚུལ་  
 དུ་དཔེ་ཆ་འདི་སྟོབ་སྟོང་བྱས་ཆོག་ལ། དཔེ་ཆའི་ནང་གི་གཏམ་རྒྱུད་དག་གིས་ང་ཚོར་བོད་ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་འཚོ་བ་དངོས་ཞིག་བརྗོད་ཡོད་པར་མ་ཟད། གཏམ་རྒྱུད་ཀྱི་  
 ནང་དོན་ང་ཚོའི་འཚོ་བ་དང་བར་ཐག་ཏུ་ཅང་ཉེ་བ་ཞིག་ཡིན། དཔེ་ཆའི་ནང་དུ་གཏམ་རྒྱུད་སྐ་མོ་འཕྲུལ་དུ་དག་ནས་མགོ་བརྩམས་ཤིང་རིམ་བཞིན་ནང་དོན་  
 ཇི་རིང་ངམ་ཇི་དཀར་སོང་ཡོད་པས་ཆོན་ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་ཐ་སྐད་གསར་བ་དག་ཀྱང་བསྐྱར་སྟོབ་ཀྱི་ཚུལ་དུ་གཏམ་རྒྱུད་རེ་རེའི་ཁྱེད་དུ་བཀོལ་སྟོང་བྱས་ཡོད་ཅིང་།  
 སྐྱེད་སྐྱེད་ཀྱི་དག་གིས་ཁྱེད་ལ་དབྱིན་ཇི་སྟོབ་པར་རམ་འདེགས་བྱེད་པ་མ་ཟད། ད་དུང་ཐ་སྐད་གསར་བ་དོས་འཛིན་དང་བརྗོད་སྟོང་བ་བྱེད་པ་སྟོབ་ཆོན་ཀྱི་  
 ནང་དོན་ཚབ་བརྗོད་བྱེད་པ་སོགས་ཀྱི་ལམ་ནས་དབྱིན་ཇིའི་བཤད་རྒྱས་དང་འབྲི་རྒྱས་མཐོར་འདེགས་གཏོང་ཐུབ། ཁྱེད་ཀྱིས་བརྗོད་སྟོང་དང་སྐྱེད་སྐྱེད་ཀྱི་ལན་  
 ཡང་དག་བསྐབ་དེབ་ཀྱི་མཇུག་ཏུ་སྟོབ་ཆོག་ལ་དགོ་ཤིན་ཀྱིས་ནང་དོན་གང་ཅུང་སྟབས་བདེའི་ངང་བསྐྱར་དཔར་བྱས་ཏེ་བཀོལ་སྟོང་བྱས་ཆོག། དགོ་སྟོབ་ནམས་  
 ཀྱིས་བསྐབ་དེབ་འདི་ནི་མཐོ་འབྲིང་རིམ་པའི་བསྐབ་དེབ་གཙོ་བོར་བཟུང་ཆོག་པར་མ་ཟད་ཡང་ན་བྱར་ལྟེ་རྒྱ་ཆ་བྱས་ཀྱང་ཆོག་གོ།

如果你已知道一千多个英语单词，这本书对你来说将很容易读懂并可以自学。  
 本书故事搜集于藏区，内容真实易懂、以少而多、以简而深，有助于加强单词记忆。  
 该书含有练习，新单词被重复应用，有助于学习单词、语法、文章，帮助师生讨论问题、分享观点。  
 本书后续有语法与其它习题答案，易于核对。课堂上所需的学习资料易于复印。本书可以作为一门高中英语课程的主教材或辅教材。

# ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

We wish to thank the following people for helping to produce this textbook: The Canada Fund, Stuart Wright, Lutarskyid, Allison Cohen, Dechen Cohen, Sangs rgyas bkra shis, Rin chen rgyal, Rnal 'byor dbang mo, Klu rgyal 'bum, Tshe dbang rdo rje, Zla ba sgrol ma, Libu Lakhi, Rig ldan rgyal, Snying bo rgyal, Elizabeth Reynolds, Devin Gonier, Emma Crimm, Sarah Oliphant, Timothy Thurtston, Rose Hyson, Bkra shis bzang po, and Elena McKinlay.



# UNIT ONE

## FATE

by Gesang Lhamu



## PREPARATORY EXERCISES

Study this vocabulary before you read the text.

ambulance ལྷ་རྩེ་ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་ 救护车  
 annoyed ལྷ་རྩེ་ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་ 打扰  
 autumn ལྷ་རྩེ་ 秋天  
 cancer ལྷ་རྩེ་ 癌症  
 caw ལྷ་རྩེ་ 呱呱  
 childish ལྷ་རྩེ་ 幼稚的  
 clutch ལྷ་རྩེ་ 抓紧  
 crow ལྷ་རྩེ་ 乌鸦  
 curiosity ལྷ་རྩེ་ 好奇心  
 deceive ལྷ་རྩེ་ 欺骗  
 depart ལྷ་རྩེ་ 离开  
 disturb ལྷ་རྩེ་ 打扰  
 dorm ལྷ་རྩེ་ 宿舍  
 encourage ལྷ་རྩེ་ 鼓励  
 fate ལྷ་རྩེ་ 命运  
 flash ལྷ་རྩེ་ 闪电  
 flock ལྷ་རྩེ་ 群  
 foolishly ལྷ་རྩེ་ 愚蠢地  
 forever ལྷ་རྩེ་ 永远  
 ignorant ལྷ་རྩེ་ 愚昧的  
 ignored ལྷ་རྩེ་ 忽略的  
 ink ལྷ་རྩེ་ 墨水  
 kiss ལྷ་རྩེ་ 吻  
 mirror ལྷ་རྩེ་ 镜子  
 moan ལྷ་རྩེ་ 抱怨声

mop ལྷ་རྩེ་ 拖地  
 muddy ལྷ་རྩེ་ 泥泞的  
 noisily ལྷ་རྩེ་ 吵闹地  
 pale ལྷ་རྩེ་ 苍白的  
 path ལྷ་རྩེ་ 小道  
 peek ལྷ་རྩེ་ 偷看  
 pile ལྷ་རྩེ་ 堆  
 relaxed ལྷ་རྩེ་ 放松  
 resist ལྷ་རྩེ་ 对抗  
 ridiculous ལྷ་རྩེ་ 荒谬的  
 ripple ལྷ་རྩེ་ 蔓延  
 scatter ལྷ་རྩེ་ 散开  
 shop ལྷ་རྩེ་ 商店  
 shout ལྷ་རྩེ་ 喊叫  
 siren ལྷ་རྩེ་ 警报  
 snowman ལྷ་རྩེ་ 雪人  
 squat ལྷ་རྩེ་ 蹲  
 squint ལྷ་རྩེ་ 眯眼看  
 suddenly ལྷ་རྩེ་ 突然地  
 surrender ལྷ་རྩེ་ 投降  
 telephone (v) ལྷ་རྩེ་ 打电话  
 tight ལྷ་རྩེ་ 紧的  
 tiny ལྷ་རྩེ་ 极小的  
 vanish ལྷ་རྩེ་ 消失  
 wet ལྷ་རྩེ་ 潮湿

Study these expressions.

Steady as rocks. ལྷ་རྩེ་ ལྷ་རྩེ་ ལྷ་རྩེ་  
 Pain rippled through her body. ལྷ་རྩེ་ ལྷ་རྩེ་ ལྷ་རྩེ་  
 Her mind was burning with curiosity. ལྷ་རྩེ་ ལྷ་རྩེ་ ལྷ་རྩེ་

Discuss these questions.

Have you ever been very sick? How old were you? What happened? Did anyone help you when you were sick? How did you get better?  
 What is cancer? Do you know anyone who has had cancer? What causes cancer?

A path behind a tall red building was covered with autumn leaves. The path was her only friend. She stood under a tree, looking up. Pieces of blue sky and sunlight peeked through the leaves. The sun warmed her body. She stood still, quietly thinking.

She wondered, "Have I reached my end?" Pain rippled through her body. She finally cried out, "I love life! I can't lose it! Is this my fate?"

Tears flowed down her pale cheeks and fell on the path. The wind gently scattered leaves in all directions. She carefully watched the leaves and noticed everything they did. Some leaves flew away in the wind, while still others resisted the wind, steady as rocks.

Suddenly, a yellow leaf fell from the tree. She was annoyed that she didn't know the name of that tree. "Why did that leaf fall? Was it tired from hanging on the branch?" she wondered. She put the leaf in her hand. Then, she put the leaf near her lips, and kissed the leaf.

The leaf became a tiny mirror. That mirror showed a pale face, a tiny nose, dry lips, and red eyes. Her dry lips moved weakly. Her voice was very quiet. She spoke to the face in the mirror, "I don't want to die. We could change it... together... we..." She tightly clutched the tiny mirror. Then, when she opened her hand, the only thing in her hand was a tiny leaf.

...

Her friends and classmates encouraged her. "Lhamu, autumn is ending. Snow is coming. Winter is your favorite season! We are sure you will make a snowman this winter. It will be a beautiful snowman."

"Lhamu, you're so strong!"

"Lhamu, we'll stand by you forever!"

"She'll never give up. She'll never leave all the work to her family and only sister!"

"No, I won't give up. I trust my friends and myself. I will make a beautiful snowman again. Lhamu, you can make it," she thought.

Tightly clutching the tiny leaf in her hand, she ran to her dorm room. When she arrived, she stood still. She was alone in the empty room. She relaxed with a deep breath. She placed the leaf on her bed. The floor had just been mopped and was still wet. She ignored the water and sat on the floor. Lhamu looked in her old blue schoolbag for a green-ink pen. When she found the green-ink pen she clutched it tightly. Then she took the tiny yellow leaf and colored it green. When she finished, she moaned, "I'm no longer an ignorant child. I am ridiculous to deceive myself so foolishly. I'll die very soon – maybe tonight, maybe a few months later. I won't make another snowman. I won't set up a shop in the village for my sister as I promised. It's time to stop dreaming. But blood cancer? They don't know yet. What should I do?"

...

Drolma finished a long day of farm work. She squinted as sunlight flashed in her eyes. Her mind was burning with curiosity. When she opened her eyes, the sun had vanished. She pulled her old blue hat tight on her head. Then, she squatted on the muddy ground beside a big pile of grass. She sat for a while, thinking. Then, she stood up carrying the big pile of grass on her back. She slowly began walking home. The big pile of grass was very heavy and she had a long distance to walk. "My daughter's final year of university," she thought, and smiled childishly.

In the distance she heard shouts, "Aunt Drolma! Lhamu telephoned!" Drolma walked as fast as she could. The pile of grass moved on her back.

A flock of black crows flew above her. The crows cawed noisily. Drolma felt terrible when she heard them.

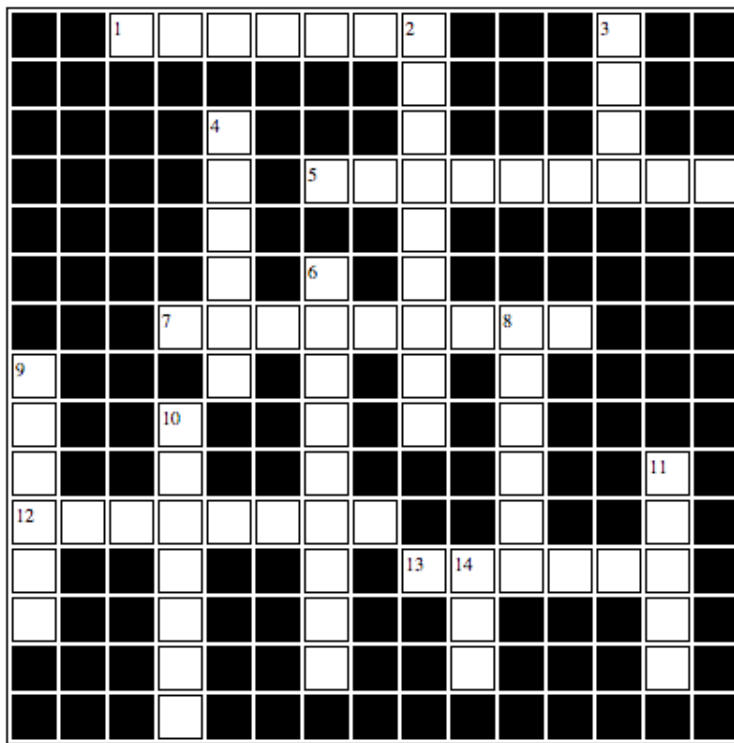
...

At eight in the evening on that same day, a white ambulance arrived at the university. The ambulance's loud siren disturbed the quiet university. Soon the ambulance departed. It sped through the streets, but Lhamu had already surrendered to her fate.

# VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Match the word with its opposite.

- |             |                |
|-------------|----------------|
| 1. childish | _____ huge     |
| 2. depart   | _____ dry      |
| 3. pale     | _____ mature   |
| 4. relaxed  | _____ whisper  |
| 5. scatter  | _____ loose    |
| 6. shout    | _____ arrive   |
| 7. tight    | _____ dark     |
| 8. tiny     | _____ collect  |
| 9. wet      | _____ stressed |



## Across

1. Lie. Trick. Not tell the truth.
5. Do something in a stupid way.
7. A car that takes you to hospital.
12. Don't know anything.
13. If you look in it, you see your face.

## Down

2. Give someone courage to do something.
3. A small road. You walk on it.
4. One of the four seasons. Also called Fall.
6. Give up. Don't go against someone or something.
8. A terrible disease.
9. Go against someone or something.
10. A person made of snow.
11. The sound from a police car or ambulance.
14. Like black water. It is in pens.

GRAMMAR EXERCISES
-------------------

Write capital letters, commas, and full stops.

drolma finished a long day of farm work she squinted as sunlight flashed in her eyes her mind was burning with curiosity when she opened her eyes the sun had vanished she pulled her old blue hat tight on her head then she squatted on the muddy ground beside a big pile of grass she sat for a while thinking then she stood up carrying the big pile of grass on her back she slowly began walking home the big pile of grass was very heavy and she had a long distance to walk "my daughter's final year of university" she thought and smiled childishly

Choose the correct verb form.

Suddenly, a yellow leaf (fall/fell) from the tree. She (is/was) annoyed that she didn't (know/knew) the name of that tree. "Why (do/did) that leaf (fall/fell)? (Is/Was) it tired from hanging on the branch?" she (wonder/wondered). She (put/putted) the leaf in her hand. Then, she (put/putted) the leaf near her lips, and (kiss/kissed) the leaf.

Fill the gaps with conjunctions: and, but.

She carefully watched the leaves \_\_\_\_\_ noticed everything they did.  
Tears flowed down her pale cheeks \_\_\_\_\_ fell on the path.  
It sped through the streets, \_\_\_\_\_ Lhamu had already surrendered to her fate.  
She ignored the water \_\_\_\_\_ sat on the floor.

Fill in the gaps: up, in, on, of, as, with, for, to.

Drolma finished a long day \_\_\_\_\_ farm work. She squinted \_\_\_\_\_ sunlight flashed \_\_\_\_\_ her eyes. Her mind was burning \_\_\_\_\_ curiosity. When she opened her eyes, the sun had vanished. She pulled her old blue hat tight \_\_\_\_\_ her head. Then, she squatted \_\_\_\_\_ the muddy ground beside a big pile \_\_\_\_\_ grass. She sat \_\_\_\_\_ a while, thinking. Then, she stood \_\_\_\_\_ carrying the big pile \_\_\_\_\_ grass \_\_\_\_\_ her back. She slowly began walking home. The big pile \_\_\_\_\_ grass was very heavy and she had a long distance \_\_\_\_\_ walk. "My daughter's final year \_\_\_\_\_ university," she thought, and smiled childishly.

QUESTIONS ABOUT THE TEXT
--------------------------

Comprehension Questions

1. What was Lhamu's mind burning with?
2. What was the path covered with?
3. What was Lhamu's only friend?
4. What color was the leaf that fell from the tree?
5. What was Lhamu's favorite season?
6. Who was Drolma?
7. How many brothers and sisters did Lhamu have?
8. What did Lhamu and her friends want to make out of snow?
9. Where did Lhamu finally put the leaf?
10. What color was Lhamu's schoolbag?
11. What color ink did Lhamu's pen have?
12. What did Lhamu promise to do with her sister?
13. What disease did Lhamu have?
14. What flashed in Drolma's eyes?
15. What color was Drolma's hat?
16. What did Drolma carry on her back?
17. What year of university was Lhamu in?
18. What kind of birds were flying above Drolma?
19. What time did the ambulance arrive at the university?
20. What disturbed the quiet university?

Discussion Questions

1. If you knew that you had a disease and that your life would soon end, what would you do with your remaining time?
2. How does this story make you feel? Have you had a family member or friend pass away from a disease?
3. What do you think Lhamu is most worried about: Dying? Leaving her family with a great burden? What would you feel worried about?
4. In the story it is autumn but almost winter. What do you think these seasons symbolize? What is your favorite season and why?
5. The title of this story is fate. What does fate mean to you? Do you believe in fate?

True or False?

1. Lhamu makes another snowman with her friends.
2. The weather that day was gray and cloudy.
3. All the leaves flew away in the wind.
4. Lhamu cried on the path.
5. Lhamu set up a shop in the village with her sister.
6. By the end of the story Lhamu has died.
7. Lhamu kissed the leaf.
8. Lhamu telephoned her mother on the day that she died.
9. Drolma felt terrible when she heard the crows caw.
10. Lhamu felt that she was an ignorant child.

WRITING
---------

What happened to Lhamu's family next? Write a short story.

# UNIT TWO

## A STRANGE JOURNEY

by Losang Tsering

# PREPARATORY EXERCISES

Study this vocabulary before you read the text.

afford འགྲོ་གྲོན་གཏོང་ཐུབ་པ། 负担得起	herd (v) ཐུགས་འཛོལ། 放牧
amulet སྐྱང་འཁོར། 护身符	hire མི་སྐོགས་སྐྱུས་པ། 雇用
approach ཉེ་བར་བཅར་པ། 靠近	hopeful རེ་བ་ཅན། 有希望的
barren ཅི་ཤིང་རིགས་མི་སྐྱེ་བའི་ས་ཆ་སྐྱུ་པ། 贫瘠的, 不结果的	hunter རྩོན་པ། 猎人
border མཚམས། 边境	immediately དེ་མ་ཐག་གྲ། 立刻
bucket ཟོ། 桶	interrupt བར་ཆད་གཏོང་པ། 打断
cash དངུལ་སྒོར། 现金	invite གདན་འདྲེན་བྱ་བ། 邀请
chimney དུ་ཁུང། 烟囱	livestock སྒོ་ཕྱགས། 家畜
comfortable བདེ་ཤིང་སྐྱིད་པ། 舒适	lunar month ཉར་ཁ། 农历
compassionate སྙིང་རྩེ་སྐྱེ་བ། 同情	majestic བཟུང་ཆགས་པའི། 高贵的, 壮丽的
confused མགོ་རྩོག་པ། 困惑	nomad འབྲོག་པ། 牧民
dawn སྐྱ་རེངས། 黎明	pilgrim/ pilgrimage གནས་འཇུག་པ། 朝圣者
dialect ཡུལ་སྐད། 方言	朝拜
dirt road ས་ལམ། 土路	rifle མི་མདའ། 步枪
dizzy མགོ་ཡོམ་འཁོར་བ། 眩晕	rob འཕྲོག་བཅོམ། 抢劫
dung ཐུང་བ། 粪	scold རྒྱུག་དམོན་བྱེད་པ། 责备
educated/ uneducated སྒོ་བ་གསོ་མོ་བ་པ། བཤེས་ཡོན་ལྡན་པའི། སྒོ་བ་གསོ་མི་མོ་བ་པ། བཤེས་ཡོན་མི་ལྡན་པའི། 受教育的 未受教育的	search འཛུལ་ཞིབ་བྱེད་པ། 搜寻
energy རྩལ་ཤུགས། 精力	shocked དངངས་སྐྱེ། 震惊
eventually འཇུག་མཐར། 最终地	speechless ཁ་གྲག་ཆུ་མེད་པར། 无言的
excited དགའ་སྤྲོ་སྐྱེ་བ། 激动的	stagger ལྷུང་ལྷུང་དུ་འགྲོ་བ། 蹒跚的
exhausted ཐང་ཆད་པ། 精疲力尽的	stove ཐབ་ཀླ། 火炉
faint (v) བརྒུལ་བ། 昏倒	straw སྐྱ་མ་དང་འཇུག་སྒ། 稻草
fetch རྩ་བཅུ་བའམ་ལེན་པ། 取, 拿	swept འཕྱག་པ། 打扫
flag དར་ཆ། 旗子	tent ཁུར། 帐篷
grassland རྩ་ཐང་། 草原	tuition སྒོ་བ་ཡོན། 学费
	vast མཐའ་ཡས་པའི། 广阔

Study these expressions.

... in the making རྩ་ཆེ་དང་བྱ་བ་སྐྱེ་བའི་ལྗོངས་ལ།  
 To stretch your legs. ངལ་གསོ་པའི་དོན།  
 To check the tires. འབྲིག་འཁོར་ལ་ཆགས་སྐྱོན་ཡོད་མེད་ལྟ་བ།

Discuss these questions.

Who has better lives – educated or uneducated people? Give evidence?  
 What dangers can people meet when they travel?



Dawn's first sunlight appeared above East Mountain. Soon after, the sun appeared and showed a majestic morning view. The green mountains were beautiful. There was a stream at the foot of East Mountain. The stream sang a quiet, never-ending song. In the valley, a vast green grassland spread in every direction.

Ango Village began waking up. Smoke came from chimneys. Breakfast and a new day were in the making!

Tsomo got up and started a fire in the stove. She quietly put straw and yak dung in the stove. She didn't want to disturb her husband. He was still sleeping. This was the second time she had gotten up that morning. The first time, she had gotten up in the dark and milked the yaks. Next, she went to fetch water. Children had already driven the livestock to the grassland. As Tsomo went to fetch water, she walked among the livestock on the vast majestic grassland.

She quickly returned home with two buckets of water. Then, she swept the house, cleaned the furniture, and put breakfast on the table. The family members came to eat breakfast. They sat in order of age around the table and started breakfast. Tsomo poured milk tea into each bowl. Then, she used two hands to respectfully offer milk tea to her parents-in-law.

Suddenly, breakfast was interrupted by the loud sound of the telephone. Tsomo answered the phone. A voice said, "This is Puntsok. Your son Dawa has disappeared again." Tsomo fainted. The whole family was shocked and confused.

...

The wind blew on Dawa's dark, thin face. He woke up. First, he noticed the vast blue sky. His messy hair moved in the wind like a small black flag. He felt very cold. He realized he was leaning against a big rock. He stood up. He saw a big valley surrounded by tall mountains. It was very quiet. There were no houses, no livestock, and no people. He was very frightened and confused. He didn't know where he was.

He walked for several hours, following a stream. His stomach was empty and he had no energy. Evening came. He needed a place to sleep. However, he only found a tree, so he went to sleep under the tree.

He got up early the next morning and continued walking. He eventually reached a vast grassland. He rested and drank from a stream. He had no food.

Suddenly, he heard a motorcycle. He was very excited to hear that sound. He ran toward the motorcycle. He stood on the path as the motorcycle approached. He waved his arms and shouted, "Please stop!" The motorcycle stopped.

"Where am I? Where am I?" Dawa asked.

The driver took his scarf off his face. He was surprised and speechless. After a few seconds, he said, "You are here."

"Oh! Where is here? Where can I catch a bus?" Dawa asked.

"This is Bagan in Yushu. There are no buses here," the man answered.

"Can you take me somewhere?" Dawa asked hopefully.

The driver said nothing and left.

Dawa felt hopeless. Earlier he had been in Nangchen. He guessed he was now far from

there.

...

After the motorcycle left, Dawa ate some wild plants, drank some water, and staggered along the dirt road. He was exhausted and fell asleep on the dirt road.

"Hey! Hey! Get off the road!" said a loud voice.

The loud voice woke him. A black car was nearby. A fat man stood beside Dawa.

Dawa raised his head, smiled, and said, "Can you give me a ride?"

"Who are you? Where are you from?" the fat man asked.

"I am Dawa from Gannan," he replied.

"Get into the car!" said the fat man compassionately.

It was warm in the car. The seats were comfortable. The car went as fast as the wind.

"Tsering, why are you taking this man?" the driver asked the fat man.

"Maybe he is from my hometown," Tsering said.

There was silence for a long time, and Dawa fell asleep.

"Beep! Beep!" The car tooted, waking Dawa.

"Are you awake?" Tsering asked.

"Yes. Where are we now?" asked Dawa.

"We're near the Yushu-Golok border," said the driver.

Tsering asked, "Where in Gannan are you from?"

"I'm from Machu. My brother is in the Tibetan Middle School in Hezuo. I'm going there. Where are you from?" Dawa said.

"We are from Labrang. My son is also in that school," Tsering said.

Dawa was very happy when he heard that.

...

The sun rose high in the sky and sunlight shone through the car windows. The men in the car felt warm. Dawa wanted some air in the car and opened a window. Fresh air rushed in, making them feel more comfortable. Tsering asked, "Why did you come to Yushu?"

"Actually, I really wanted to go to Lhasa," Dawa said.

"What happened?" Tsering said.

"I sold my motorcycle and ran away from home twice last year. Each time my relatives caught me. It was difficult for me to travel because I know little Chinese," Dawa said.

"Oh? Did you come to Yushu then?" said Tsering.

"No. My relatives brought me home both times. All my family members scolded me. Father scolded less than others, but he said that I couldn't go alone anywhere, because I am uneducated. Then, I decided to walk to Lhasa with some friends."

Tsering gave Dawa a cigarette and asked him to continue his story.

"We left for Lhasa one morning on the second day of the second lunar month. I didn't ask my family for money. My friends had some. We all wore Tibetan robes. We had only three small bags of *tsamba* and some butter. The first day we walked through a vast grassland and only ate twice. We stayed by a stream at night. We were full of hope and energy.

"The second day, we reached somewhere in Golok. We met some nomads, slept in their tent, and ate some food they gave us. The next day we walked through barren land until late at night..."

The car stopped. They got out and stretched their legs. The driver checked the tires. They were still 400 kilometers from Xining. Then they got back inside the car and headed toward Xining.

"Tell us the rest of your story," Tsering said.

"We continued walking and eventually reached Yushu. We were exhausted from walking and searched for a place to sleep that night. Several hunters with rifles approached us. They talked in their dialect, so we couldn't understand them. We were very afraid of them. They walked around us, throwing our things here and there. We just sat there and watched.

"One of the hunters told us to stand up. We didn't. He told us again but we still didn't stand up. Then the man beat us and took our money. We fought back and I was knocked out. When I woke up the next day I was alone.

"Did you meet us on the road after you were robbed?" asked Tsering.

"No. After I was robbed, I was hired by a local family to herd their livestock. I herded their livestock for two months. I was often hungry. They only gave me a small bowl of *tsamba* each day and no cash. One day I found some money in my amulet. I tore it open and found 500 yuan. My parents had secretly put the money in my amulet."

"What happened then?" asked Tsering.

"I left that family immediately and went to Nangchen County Town by bus. I got a hotel room. There were already two other men in the room. They seemed very kind. They told me they were pilgrims.

"I went for supper with those men. When we left the hotel, my roommates pointed to a small truck. They said they were driving it to Lhasa and invited me to go with them. That night we talked a lot about our pilgrimage and drank hot water. After a few cups of water, I was dizzy and couldn't see clearly. The next day I woke up in a big valley."

"Maybe the two men took you to Bagan," Tsering said.

"I'm not sure," said Dawa.

"Dawa, have you been to school?" Tsering asked.

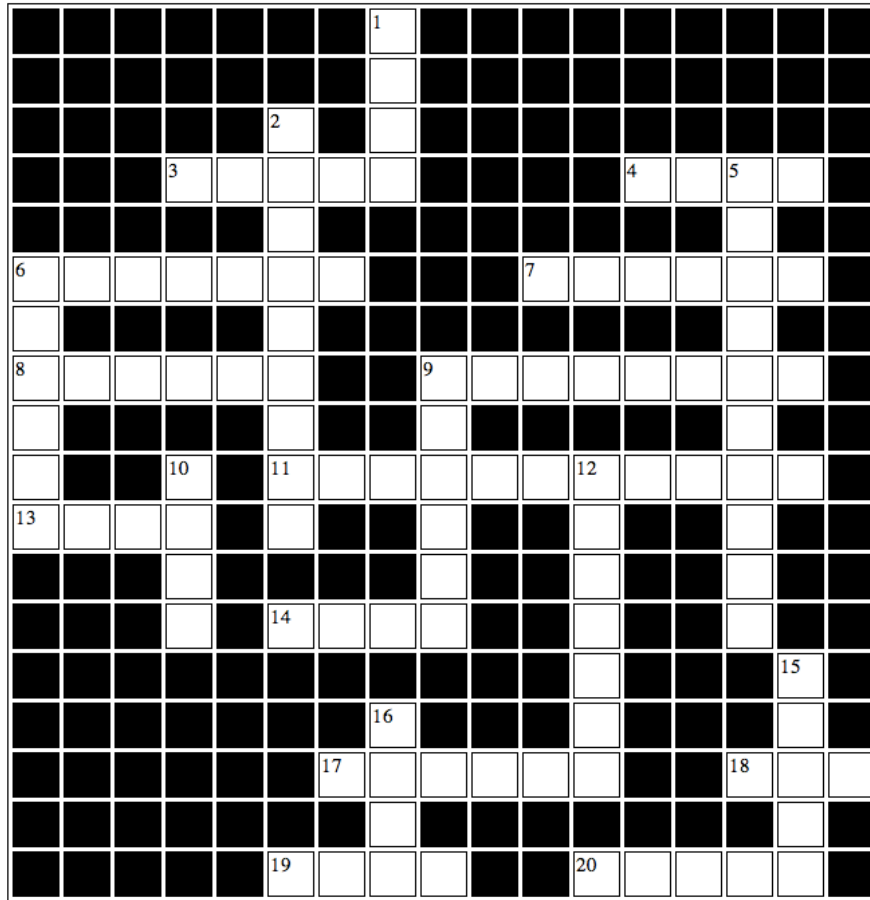
"No. My family couldn't afford the tuition. If I were educated, I wouldn't suffer like this," Dawa said sadly.

"Tuition is very expensive," said Tsering.

"We're almost in Xining. Tomorrow we'll be home," the driver said.

"Tomorrow is the fifteenth day of the fifth lunar month, the day of the horserace at home," Dawa thought to himself.

# VOCABULARY EXERCISES



## Across

3. To fall down or pass out suddenly from shock.
4. Money.
6. Surprised.
7. A person who kills or hunts animals.
8. A special necklace.
9. To go to something or someone.
11. Opposite of uncomfortable.
13. Give somebody money to do a job.
14. To take care of animals on the grassland.
17. No trees or bushes, no houses or villages either.
18. To take somebody's money or things.
19. Comes from yaks or sheep, you can use this to light a stove.
20. A kind of gun used for hunting.

## Down

1. Very big or wide open.
2. Animals, e.g. yak and sheep.
5. You can't speak.
6. To look for something or somebody.
9. To be able to buy something.
10. You can live in it, you can move it.
12. The cost of going to school.
15. You can cook on this.
16. Time when the sun is rising.

Match the word to its meaning.

- |              |       |  |
|--------------|-------|--|
| 1. dialect   | _____ | get something  |
| 2. educated  | _____ | to clean, to brush away dirt                             |
| 3. straw     | _____ | a form of language in a place                            |
| 4. nomad     | _____ | full of hope   |
| 5. pilgrim   | _____ | a person who goes somewhere for a religious reason       |
| 6. grassland | _____ | a person who travels from place to place, with livestock |
| 7. sweep     | _____ | dried grass  |
| 8. hopeful   | _____ | a large place covered in grass                           |
| 9. chimney   | _____ | takes smoke out of the house                             |
| 10. fetch    | _____ | when you go to school or study you become this           |

Fill in the gaps.

border bucket compassionate confused dirt road dizzy uneducated energy eventually  
excited exhausted fetch flag

1. Jimpa's hair moved in the wind like a small black \_\_\_\_\_.
2. "Teacher, I don't understand. I am \_\_\_\_\_ about what you said."
3. Please give me that \_\_\_\_\_, so I can fetch some water.
4. China shares a \_\_\_\_\_ with 14 different countries.
5. I was so \_\_\_\_\_ when I watched Choeyang Kyi win a medal in the 2012 Olympics.
6. My father doesn't like to drink alcohol. He says it makes him \_\_\_\_\_ and he cannot think clearly.
7. After doing four hours of homework, Drolma just wanted to sleep. She felt \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Many people do not have running water. They must sometimes walk very far to \_\_\_\_\_ water from a river or a stream.
9. The fat man was very nice and he wanted to help me. He was a \_\_\_\_\_ man.
10. If you are \_\_\_\_\_, it is difficult to get a job.

Change the word form.

- immediately → adjective: \_\_\_\_\_
- compassionate → noun: \_\_\_\_\_
- confused → noun: \_\_\_\_\_
- eventually → adjective: \_\_\_\_\_
- nomad → adjective: \_\_\_\_\_
- dizzy → noun: \_\_\_\_\_
- rob → noun: \_\_\_\_\_
- invite → noun: \_\_\_\_\_
- hopeful → noun: \_\_\_\_\_
- excited → noun: \_\_\_\_\_

Choose three words that are most important for this story. Why?  
livestock hunter educated dizzy afford excited hire immediately tuition

GRAMMAR EXERCISES
-------------------

Choose the right verb form.

The wind (blew/blow) on Dawa's face. He woke up. Suddenly, he (hears/heard) a motorcycle, but the driver left him. Dawa (feels/felt) hopeless. He (ate/eats) some wild plants. A fat man, Tsering, and a driver came in a black car and invited him to get into the car. Dawa told Tsering about his journey. One morning, Dawa and his friends (left/leave) for Lhasa. The second day they (reach/reached) somewhere in Golok. In Yushu, some hunters (rob/robbed) him and his friends. A local family (hired/hire) Dawa to herd their livestock. Some men gave Dawa hot water to drink, but the next day he (wake/woke) up in a big valley.

"Dawa, have you been to school? " Tsering (ask/asked).

"No, my family (can't/couldn't) afford the tuition. If I were educated, I wouldn't suffer like this, " Dawa (says/said) sadly.

Fill the gaps with: in, on, up, to, among.

Tsomo got \_\_\_\_\_ and started a fire \_\_\_\_\_ the stove. She quietly put straw and yak dung \_\_\_\_\_ the stove. She didn't want \_\_\_\_\_ disturb her husband. He was still sleeping. This was the second time she had gotten \_\_\_\_\_ that morning. The first time, she had gotten \_\_\_\_\_ the dark and milked the yaks. Next, she went \_\_\_\_\_ fetch water. Children had already driven the livestock \_\_\_\_\_ the grassland. As Tsomo went \_\_\_\_\_ fetch water, she walked \_\_\_\_\_ the livestock \_\_\_\_\_ the vast majestic grassland.

Put the sentences in the right order.

no/ he/ food/ had  
energy/ no/ had/ he  
my friends/ some money/ had/  
had /three small bags of *tsamba*/we / only  
that morning/ she / gotten up / this was the second time / had/  
had / in the dark and milked yak/ she /gotten up  
children/ driven / the livestock to the grassland / already/ had  
been /he/ had/ in Nangchen/ earlier  
put / secretly /my parents /had /the money in my amulet

Write capital letters, commas, and full stops.

dawn's first sunlight appeared above east mountain soon after the sun appeared and showed a majestic morning view the green mountains were beautiful there was a stream at the foot of east mountain the stream sang a quiet never-ending song in the valley a vast green grassland spread in every direction

Fill in the blanks with adverbs.

She \_\_\_\_\_ returned home with two buckets of water.

She used two hands to \_\_\_\_\_ offer milk tea to her parents-in-law.

\_\_\_\_\_, breakfast was interrupted by the loud sound of the telephone

He got up \_\_\_\_\_ the next morning and continued walking.

He \_\_\_\_\_ reached a vast grassland.

"Can you take me somewhere?" Dawa asked \_\_\_\_\_.

"Get into the car!" said the fat man \_\_\_\_\_.

My parents had \_\_\_\_\_ put the money in my amulet.

I left that family \_\_\_\_\_ and went to Nangchen County Town by bus.

"If I were educated, I wouldn't suffer like this," Dawa said \_\_\_\_\_.

Fill the gaps with verbs.

She quickly \_\_\_\_\_ home with two buckets of water. Then, she \_\_\_\_\_ the house, \_\_\_\_\_ the furniture, and \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast on the table. The family members \_\_\_\_\_ to eat breakfast. They \_\_\_\_\_ in order of age around the table and \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast. Tsomo \_\_\_\_\_ milk tea into each bowl. Then, she \_\_\_\_\_ two hands to respectfully \_\_\_\_\_ milk tea to her parents-in-law.

Write 'and' in the sentences below.

Breakfast a new day were in the making!

He was surprised speechless.

He was very frightened confused

He waved his arms shouted, "Please stop!"

His stomach was empty he had no energy.

I tore it open found 500 yuan.

That night we talked a lot about our pilgrimage drank hot water.

The first day we walked through a vast grassland only ate twice.

The whole family was shocked confused.

Tsomo got up started a fire in the stove.

We continued walking eventually reached Yushu.

QUESTIONS ABOUT THE TEXT
--------------------------

Comprehension Questions

1. What was at the foot of East Mountain?
2. As Ango Village began waking up, what two things were "in the making"?
3. What had the children driven across the grassland?
4. As Tsomo went to fetch water, what did she walk on?
5. Where did Tsomo start a fire?
6. What came from the chimneys?
7. What interrupted breakfast?
8. Why was the whole family shocked and confused at breakfast?
9. Did Dawa and his friends want to go to Yushu?
10. What kind of landscape did Dawa and his friends walk through on the day after staying with nomads in a tent in Golok?
11. What did Dawa stagger along?
12. While waiting by the stream at night, Dawa and his friends were filled with what?
13. Dawa's messy hair was like what?
14. What did the driver check when the people got out of the car and stretched their legs?
15. Why couldn't Dawa and his friends understand the hunters?
16. Dawa was hired by a family to herd what?
17. After opening the car window, what rushed in?
18. What could Dawa's family not afford?
19. After Dawa drank a few cups of water, how did he feel?
20. What was going to happen in Dawa's home on the fifteenth day of the fifth lunar month?

Discussion Questions

1. If you were lost, like Dawa, how would you feel?
2. What would you do to try to find your way?
3. Of all the people who Dawa met on his "strange journey", whom would you trust the most, and why?
4. Do you agree with Dawa that being uneducated caused him to suffer?
5. When Dawa thought about the horserace at home, did it seem like he missed home?

True or False?

1. The sun rose over West Mountain.
2. Tsomo fetched three buckets of water.
3. Breakfast was interrupted when the telephone rang.
4. Dawa was excited to hear the sound of a motorbike.
5. After the motorcycle left, Dawa ate some wild plants and drank tea.
6. Dawa's brother is in the Tibetan Secondary School in Xiahe.
7. Dawa and his friends left for Yushu on the third day of the third lunar month.
8. They carried three small bags of *tsamba* and some butter.
9. In Nangchen County Town, Dawa met two pilgrims who seemed kind.
10. Dawa's family could afford tuition fees.



WRITING
---------

What will happen to Dawa when he goes home? Write a short story.

# UNIT THREE

## LOVE CONQUERS ALL

by Anonymous

## PREPARATORY EXERCISES

Study this vocabulary before you read the text.

amazed ཡ་མཚན་བ། 惊奇	hug འཐམ་ཁྱུད་བྱེད་བ། 拥抱
anxious རེ་མས་ཁྲལ། 担忧	hurry ཟུར་འཛུབ་ངང་། 急忙
apron ཕང་ཁེབས། 围裙	imagine འཆར་ལྗང་བྱེད་བ། 想象
arrogant འབྱིང་ཉམས། 高傲	impressed བག་ཆགས་ཟབ་པའི། 使印象深刻
behavior ཐུག་པ། 行为	improve མཐོར་གདེགས། 提高
blame ཟུག་དམོད། 抱怨	kidding ལྷ་རེ། 玩笑
comb (v) སྒ་ཤང་བ། 梳子	lazy རྒྱུད་ལག། 懒惰
conversation ཁ་བདམ་སྒྲིང་མོ། 会话	pinch (v) གཙུས་བ། 掐
cook ཟས་གཡོ་སྦྱར་བྱེད་བ། 做饭	polite ལྷན་ལུགས་ལྡན་བ། 有礼貌的
delighted དགའ་སྤྱོད་བ། 高兴的	quickly མཐོག་གསལ་ཟུར་ངང་། 很快地
disappoint ཡིད་ཆད། 失望	rub ཕྱི་དོར་བྱེད་བ། 擦
excellent ཁྱད་ཏུ་འཕགས་བ། 很棒	squeal གཙོར་སྒྲིང་འི་པོ་ཐུག་བ། 尖叫
excuse (n) ཁ་གཡམ་ས། 借口	straight འདྲ་པོ། 直的
fault རྩོད་འཁུལ། 错误	suit རུབ་གོས། 西装
frown (v) ཁོང་ཁྱོ་ལངས་བ། 愤怒	teardrops མིག་ཆུ། 眼泪
gaze ཕུར་ཚྭ་སྒྲུབ་བཟུང་བ། 盯视	waist སྐད་བ། 腰
government སྤྱིད་གཞུང་། 政府	weary ཐང་ཆད་བ། 疲惫的
grab སྒར་འདྲ། 抓	whisper (v) ཤབ་ཤབ་སྒྲུབ་བ། 耳语
graduate མཐར་ཕྱིན་བ། 毕业	worried རེ་མས་ཁྱུར་བྱེད་བ། 担忧的
holy སྒ་ན་མེད་པའི། 神圣	
horrible རྒྱུ་གཡམ་བ། 可怕的	

Learn these expressions.

- bitch རྒྱུན་མ།
- ... the hell – why the hell, where the hell, who the hell, how the hell, when the hell ཁོང་ཁྱོ་ལངས་བའི་སྒོ་ནས་ལས་འདད་པའི་ནམ་པ་ཁྱེད་ནང་དུ་བགོལ།
- ... point your finger at someone གཤེག་ཤེག་གཏོང་བའི་དོན།
- ... hang your head མགོ་སྒྱར་པ་ཡིད་སྦྱོར་བ་དང་ཡིད་ཆད་པའི་དོན།
- ... kick someone out ཕྱིར་ཕུད་བ།
- ... excuse me དགོངས་དག་ལྟ་བའི་དོན།
- ... to sleep like a log གཉིད་ཟབ་མོ་ལྟ་བ།
- ... to kindle a fire མེ་སྒར་བ།
- ... a leopard never changes his spots འབྱུར་པ་མེད་པའམ་ལྷ་ཚྭ་སྒྲུབ་ཆེ་བའི་དོན།
- ... tears well up མིག་མཐར་མཆི་མ་འཁོར་བ།

Lhamo was waking up. The morning's golden sunlight was shining through the window. Lhamo rubbed her eyes with her small hands. Then, she looked out of her tiny window. Suddenly, she screamed.

"Oh my holy lama! I slept like a log!" she squealed, and quickly put on an old black robe. She quickly tied an old red sash around her waist. She didn't wash her face or comb her hair. She ran to the kitchen. As soon as she arrived, she put on a dirty black apron and began to kindle the fire.

"Lhamo, you bitch! Can you hear me? Why the hell didn't you wash my shirt? I told you yesterday to wash it. Who do you think you are?" yelled Tashi from his bedroom. He was studying in a high school in the city. He came to his home in the village once a week. His parents were both government officials in the city.

"I'm very sorry. I was reading a book last night and I..."

"Shut up! I didn't want to hear your excuse. You didn't do your work!" yelled Tashi, pointing his finger at Lhamo.

"I'm sorry. Really, really sorry. I'll wash it now," whispered Lhamo, her head hung so low that it was almost touching her stomach.

"Mom! Tsomo! Lhamo didn't wash my shirt! What will I wear to school this week? My schoolmates will laugh at me!" shouted Tashi to his mother, who was in the bedroom with her husband, Dorji.

"Nobody will laugh at you if you wear the same shirt for two weeks. However, people *will* laugh at you if you get the same marks, and never improve!" yelled Dorji.

"Lhamo! Please be careful next time. I'll kick you out even if your father is Dorji's friend!" said Tsomo. "Put on the yellow shirt which I bought yesterday, my dear boy," said Tsomo to her son.

Lhamo quietly swept the kitchen floor and thought about her life. Her mother had died when she was four. Her father had not remarried. He didn't have enough money to pay Lhamo's middle school tuition, so she was working in Dorji's family for her tuition. She had very little time to study.

...

The next Sunday, Lhamo's father came to Dorji's home. He had a big smiling face and red cheeks. He held a pile of books.

"Dear girl! See what I'm holding? Books! The key to your future," said Norbu excitedly.

"Oh dear father! You surprised me. Thank you, but ..."

"What's the matter baby? Did Tashi scold you again?" frowned Norbu. "It's all my fault. I promised your mother you would be an educated lady with a bright future. But how can I do it?" said Norbu. A tear rolled down his cheek.

"Dear father, please don't blame yourself. I'm doing well. I study by myself. I think I'm doing better than Tashi," said Lhamo.

"Ah! When did you arrive, my friend Norbu?" said Dorji, walking into the room.

"Just a moment ago, Dorji. How is my daughter?"

"She's doing well. Don't worry about it."

"Right! I think we fathers should test our children somehow. What do you think?"

"Excellent! Let's do it. I want to know how smart my boy is," said Dorji. Then he called Tashi to come.

"OK! I'll ask you two the same question," said Norbu, looking at Tashi and Lhamo. "You can only choose one, your lover or your family. Which one do you choose?"

"I choose family," said Tashi. Then he turned to look at Lhamo. Lhamo was looking out the window, lost in thought. Slowly, she replied, "Well, I don't really know. I choose both, I guess. I really can't imagine the world without a lover *and* a family."

Tashi was amazed by her answer. He thought, "How did she answer like that? There was something almost artistic about her answer." He thought about her answer all night long.

...

"Tashi, it's time to get up," said Lhamo quietly, standing outside his room. She was afraid that Tashi would yell at her. But Tashi felt he couldn't yell at her that morning. He got up and opened his door. His weary eyes looked into Lhamo's bright eyes. It seemed he had never seen her before. Then he quickly broke free of her gaze.

"You've got bright eyes, hey? I'll come now," he said, grabbing his school bag. "You should wash your hair. It looks horrible."

In the kitchen, Tashi ate a mouthful of bread and drank a mouthful of tea. He didn't put butter in his tea as he usually did. He finished his breakfast quickly.

"Do you need another cup of tea?" asked Lhamo.

"I'm full. Tell my mother that I will come home this afternoon and stay home all week. I'll ask the teacher. Please clean yourself up before I come home. You are no longer a child. I will kick you if you look the same when I return home," said Tashi, smiling. Lhamo was confused by Tashi's behavior. She didn't know why he had so suddenly changed. She soon washed her hair and dressed in a clean robe. Then she cooked lunch for the family.

As Lhamo was cooking, she heard a knock on the door. She ran to the door and opened it. She saw a tall man in a black suit and a neatly dressed woman.

"Excuse me, is Miss Lhamo here?" asked the woman politely.

"I'm Lhamo. Who are you? What do you want?" asked Lhamo.

"Oh dear! Are you telling the truth? Can we come inside and have a cup of tea, please? We'll explain more after that," the woman said.

"Please come inside, but don't stay too long. The others will come back for lunch soon and I haven't finished cooking yet," said Lhamo. She poured two cups of milk tea for them.

"OK, we'll tell you directly. You can come and study in our school without paying any tuition."

"What? Say that again please. Did you say that I can go to the school without tuition? Is that possible?"

"Yes, it's true. Your father wrote a letter to our school. He told us your story. We want to help you. So, we came here today to meet you. Your father said that you are studying by yourself. Is that true?" said the man, smiling.

"Yes, yes. That's true. I'm doing well. I won't disappoint you. Please believe what my father said," said Lhamo, tears welling up in her eyes. She was so happy.

"I'm back!" Tashi called as he pushed the door open. "My teacher gave me permission to stay home for a week. Did my mother come back? Did you tell her that I'm going to stay home this week?" asked Tashi.

"Yes, I told her. But your father didn't agree," replied Lhamo.

Tashi saw the two strangers and said to Lhamo, "Hey! Who are they? Are they your friends?"

"Yes they are my friends! Please don't be angry. I'll bring your lunch soon."

"No problem. I'm not in a hurry. Just finish your conversation. Also, you look really beautiful now," said Tashi. Then he went straight to his bedroom.

Lhamo was impressed by Tashi's kindness, but she was also confused. She felt both happy and worried. She thought, "Why is he acting like that? Is he trying to change himself? No! It is impossible for such an arrogant person to change. As the saying goes, a leopard never changes his spots."

The neatly dressed woman said, "Lhamo, we will go now. Please come to our school in the city next week."

"Thank you very much. I'll come next week."

"Good-bye!"

"Bye!"

...

Tashi had been nice the whole week. He helped Lhamo wash and cook. Tsomo was very surprised.

She could not understand why her arrogant son was suddenly so kind. Tashi's father was very happy about it. At the end of the week, everyone was surprised when Lhamo said she was leaving.

"Is it true? Are you kidding, Lhamo?" Tashi asked.

"Yes, it is true. I'm not kidding. I was very happy to work here. Your family was kind to me. Thank you very much."

...

"Which school will you go to? Can you find the school in the city? You've never been to the city before. Maybe you need my help," said Tashi's father anxiously.

"Thank you, Uncle. The woman said that she'd come and take me."

"I see."

"So, I will go now. Thank you again. I'll never forget your kindness," said Lhamo and went out. She saw her father standing at the gate. She was delighted and hugged him. Teardrops fell from both of their eyes.

...

Lhamo was very excited when she entered the school with the neatly dressed woman. She pinched herself to check if she was dreaming. The woman led her to a classroom, and introduced her to the class. Lhamo looked at all of them. She opened her mouth in surprise when she saw Tashi. He was shocked too. She sat near him because only that seat was empty. Tashi looked into Lhamo's eyes.

"You know what? You're a beauty, and you are also smart. Study hard, otherwise the others will laugh at you, OK?" said Tashi quietly, while the teacher was writing on the blackboard.

"Sure. Thank you."

"Promise?" asked Tashi.

"Promise!" replied Lhamo.

"You promise! I promise! Cannot change for a hundred years! Hang yourself if you change!" they whispered, and laughed.

They became closer. They were no longer master and the servant. They talked like friends. They got along very well and helped each other study. They got used to being together. Sometimes they didn't go to their dorms. Instead, they studied in the classroom. They both got good grades on their exams. Finally, Tashi and Lhamo graduated from school. Lhamo was eighth in the class, and Tashi was the sixth.

"Now tell me the truth, Lhamo. Do you love me?" asked Tashi suddenly.

"I... I have never thought... never thought about it."

"Come on, tell me the truth!"

"I... you tell me first. Do you love me?" asked Lhamo shyly.

"Of course! I fell in love with you that night that you answered our fathers' question."

"I love you too," said Lhamo. "But I'm so poor. Your parents will scold you."

"I don't care about that. I just love what I have chosen. They can't control me, Lhamo."

"But do you remember what you said? You said that you would choose 'family'. Now you've chosen your lover instead."

"It was difficult at that time. I could not choose my lover because my father did not allow me to talk about that. Now, I am a man. I can talk about love now."

"Are you sure?"

"Don't you believe me?"

"Yes!"

"What? You lazy girl..."

"You... you are a lazy boy too. Remember when you..."

They went hand in hand towards their bright future.

# VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Match the word to its meaning.

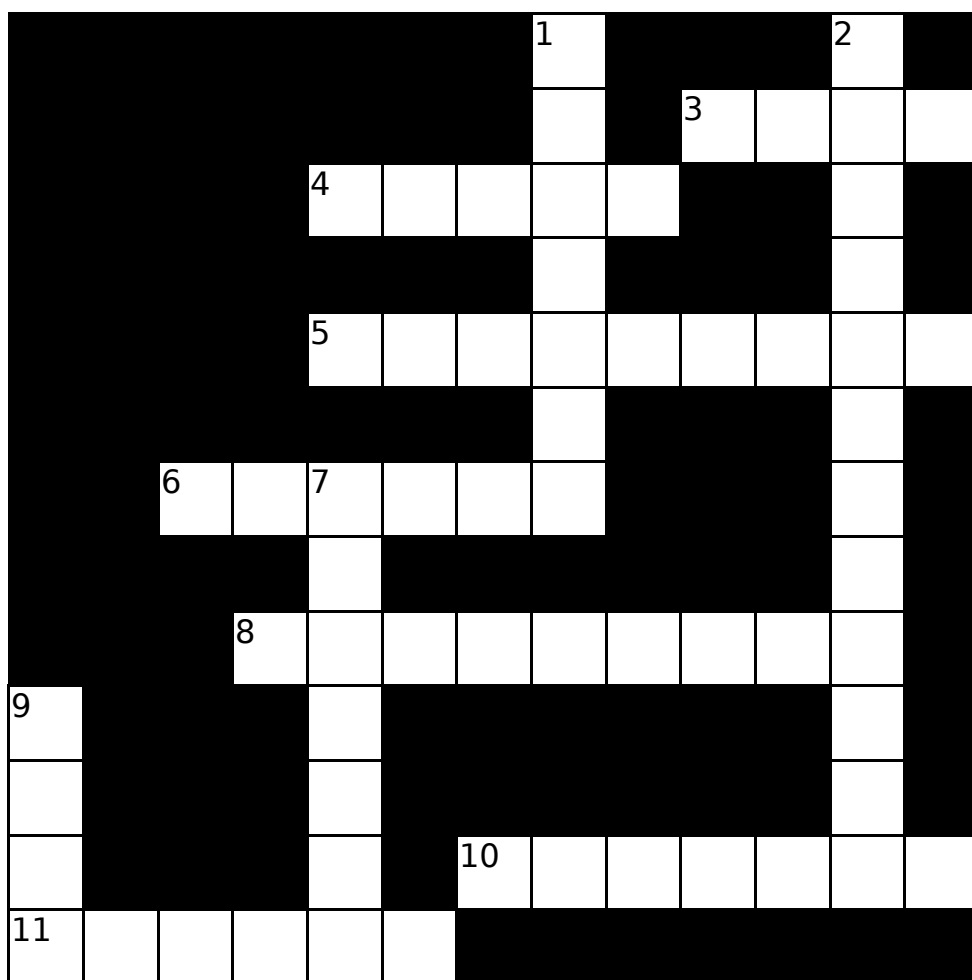
- |             |   |
|-------------|---|
| 1. apron    | _____ respectful                            |
| 2. suit     | _____ joking                                |
| 3. graduate | _____ actions                               |
| 4. weary    | _____ jacket, pants and tie                 |
| 5. polite   | _____ cloth that protects clothes from dirt |
| 6. blame    | _____ accuse                                |
| 7. kidding  | _____ massage                               |
| 8. pinch    | _____ very tired                            |
| 9. behavior | _____ complete school                       |
| 10. rub     | _____ grab someone's flesh painfully        |

Fill in the gaps. Use words from the vocabulary list.

- His parents were both \_\_\_\_\_ officials in the city.
- She quickly tied an old red sash around her \_\_\_\_\_.
- She didn't wash her face or \_\_\_\_\_ her hair.
- Lhamo was \_\_\_\_\_ by Tashi's kindness.
- "You've got bright eyes, hey? I'll come now," he said, \_\_\_\_\_ his school bag.
- "Oh my \_\_\_\_\_ lama! I slept like a log!"
- "Oh my holy lama! I slept like a log!" she \_\_\_\_\_
- She was delighted and \_\_\_\_\_ him.
- \_\_\_\_\_ fell from both of their eyes.
- It's all my \_\_\_\_\_.

Match the word with its opposite.

- |               |                    |
|---------------|--------------------|
| 1. whisper    | _____ smile        |
| 2. straight   | _____ hard working |
| 3. lazy       | _____ slowly       |
| 4. horrible   | _____ good         |
| 5. arrogant   | _____ get worse    |
| 6. disappoint | _____ crooked      |
| 7. quickly    | _____ shout        |
| 8. improve    | _____ pleased      |
| 9. frown      | _____ modest       |



#### Across

- 3. Make food.
- 4. Move quickly.
- 5. Very pleased.
- 6. Surprise greatly.
- 8. Very good.
- 10. Think about.
- 11. Reason or explanation.

#### Down

- 1. Concerned.
- 2. Speaking with others.
- 7. Worried or nervous.
- 9. Look at.



GRAMMAR EXERCISES
-------------------

Fill the gaps with pronouns.

Tashi had been nice the whole week. \_\_\_\_\_ helped Lhamo wash and cook. Tsomo was very surprised. \_\_\_\_\_ could not understand why \_\_\_\_\_ arrogant son was suddenly so kind. Tashi's father was very happy about \_\_\_\_\_. At the end of the week, everyone was surprised when Lhamo said \_\_\_\_\_ was leaving.

Fill the gaps with: did, didn't, do, don't.

Dear father, please \_\_\_\_\_ blame yourself.  
Why the hell \_\_\_\_\_ you wash my shirt?  
\_\_\_\_\_ Tashi scold you again?"  
He \_\_\_\_\_ put butter in his tea as he usually \_\_\_\_\_.  
Let's \_\_\_\_\_ it.  
Please \_\_\_\_\_ be angry.  
\_\_\_\_\_ you love me?"  
She \_\_\_\_\_ know why he had so suddenly changed.  
What \_\_\_\_\_ you want?"  
When \_\_\_\_\_ you arrive, my friend Norbu?"  
\_\_\_\_\_ my mother come back?  
Which one \_\_\_\_\_ you choose?"  
Who \_\_\_\_\_ you think you are?

Correct one mistake in each sentence.

Lhamo rubbed her eyes at her small hands.  
His parents were both government officials on the city.  
What will I wear under school this week?  
Lhamo was looking between the window?  
Then she cooked lunch through the family.  
She sat beneath him because only that seat was empty  
I can talk over love now.  
Finally, Tashi and Lhamo graduated near school.  
She saw her father standing over the gate.

Fill the gaps with verbs.

"I'm full. \_\_\_\_\_ my mother that I \_\_\_\_\_ home this afternoon and stay home all week. I \_\_\_\_\_ the teacher. Please \_\_\_\_\_ yourself up before I come home. You are no longer a child. I \_\_\_\_\_ you if you look the same when I return home," said Tashi, smiling. Lhamo \_\_\_\_\_ by Tashi's behavior. She \_\_\_\_\_ why he \_\_\_\_\_ so suddenly \_\_\_\_\_. She soon \_\_\_\_\_ her hair and \_\_\_\_\_ in a clean robe. Then she \_\_\_\_\_ lunch for the family.

Choose the correct verb form.

Lhamo (is/was) very excited when she (entered/enter) the school with the neatly dressed woman. She (pinch/pinched) herself to (checked/check) if she (is/was/am) dreaming. The woman (led/lead) her to a classroom, and (introduced/introduce) her to the class. Lhamo (look/looked/looking) at all of them. She (opened/open) her mouth in surprise when she (see/saw/seeing) Tashi. He (am/is/was/are) shocked too. She (sit/sat) near him because only that seat (be/was/am) empty. Tashi (looking/looked/look) into Lhamo's eyes.

Fill the gaps with punctuation.

"Dear girl\_\_\_\_ See what I'm holding\_\_\_\_ Books\_\_\_\_ The key to your future\_\_\_\_ " said Norbu excitedly\_\_\_\_

"Oh dear father\_\_\_\_ You surprised me\_\_\_\_ Thank you\_\_\_\_ but ..."

"What's the matter baby\_\_\_\_ Did Tashi scold you again\_\_\_\_ " frowned Norbu\_\_\_\_ "It's all my fault\_\_\_\_ I promised your mother you would be an educated lady with a bright future\_\_\_\_ But how can I do it\_\_\_\_ " said Norbu\_\_\_\_ A tear rolled down his cheek\_\_\_\_

"Dear father\_\_\_\_ please don't blame yourself\_\_\_\_ I'm doing well\_\_\_\_ I study by myself\_\_\_\_ I think I'm doing better than Tashi\_\_\_\_ " said Lhamo\_\_\_\_

"Ah\_\_\_\_ When did you arrive\_\_\_\_ my friend Norbu\_\_\_\_ " said Dorji\_\_\_\_ walking into the room\_\_\_\_

"Just a moment ago, Dorji. How is my daughter?"

"She's doing well\_\_\_\_ Don't worry about it\_\_\_\_ "

"Right\_\_\_\_ I think we fathers should test our children somehow\_\_\_\_ What do you think\_\_\_\_ "

"Excellent\_\_\_\_ Let's do it\_\_\_\_ I want to know how smart my boy is\_\_\_\_ " said Dorji\_\_\_\_ Then he called Tashi to come\_\_\_\_

QUESTIONS ABOUT THE TEXT
--------------------------

### Comprehension Questions

1. What piece of clothing was Lhamo supposed to wash?
2. What kind of job do Tashi's parents have?
3. Who is Tsomo?
4. What does Tashi wear to school that week?
5. How old was Lhamo when her mother died?
6. What did Lhamo's father bring when he went to visit his daughter?
7. What question did Lhamo and Tashi's fathers ask them?
8. What emotion did Lhamo feel when she saw Tashi in the classroom?
9. What class rank did Lhamo and Tashi have when they graduated?
10. When Lhamo was cooking who knocked on the door?
11. What was Lhamo doing that made her forget to wash Tashi's shirt?
12. What will make the other students laugh at Tashi?
13. Why did Lhamo pinch herself?
14. Where is the school that Lhamo and Tashi go to?
15. Who took Lhamo to the school?
16. What kind of tea did Lhamo give the visitors?
17. Why will Tashi's parents scold him when he tells them he loves Lhamo?
18. Who is Norbu?
19. When first asked the question, what does Tashi choose? A lover? Or his family?
20. What did Lhamo's father promise her mother before she died?

### Discussion Questions

1. If you could only choose one, your lover, or your family which would you choose and why?
2. What do you think happens when Tashi and Lhamo tell their families about their relationship? What do you think the family will say?
3. When did you first realize that Tashi loved Lhamo? What do you think made him love her? Do you think she realized that Tashi loved her?
4. What is the traditional relationship between masters and servants? What do you think is the difference between a worker, a servant, and a slave? Do people have servants now?
5. In the story Lhamo's father never remarries. Why do you think this is? Is remarriage common or do people think that it is overly complicated?

### True or False?

1. Lhamo overslept.
2. Tashi's attitude towards Lhamo changes over the course of the story.
3. Lhamo and Tashi's parents are not friends.
4. Lhamo's father had been remarried.
5. Tashi and Lhamo helped each other study.
6. Tashi's teacher did not give him permission to stay home for the week.
7. Tashi usually came home from his school in the city once a week.
8. Lhamo has large hands.
9. When asked the question about choosing a lover or her family, Lhamo chooses her family.
10. Lhamo's father had enough money to pay for her middle school tuition but not her high school tuition.

WRITING
---------

It is ten years after the story. Where are Tashi and Lhamo now? What do they look like? What are they doing?

# UNIT FOUR

## DESTROYING THE CAGE

by Hangjee Dundrup

# PREPARATORY EXERCISES

Study this vocabulary before you read the text.

absent མ་སློབས་དཔལ་མ་ཚད་བ། 缺席  
 adobe ས་ཕག་གི་ཡོལ་ཁྱུ་རྒྱུ་བཟོ་བའི་ 用土坯建造的  
 adorned རྒྱན་སྒྲུབ། 装饰; 佩带  
 adornments མཛེས་རྒྱན། 装饰品  
 ancestors མེས་པོ། 祖先  
 descendants མི་རབས་གོང་མ། 祖先  
 announced བྱང་བསྐྱུགས་བྱེད་པ། 宣布  
 arranged བཞོད་སྒྲིག་བྱེད་པ། 安排  
 attend ཞུགས་པ། 参加  
 auspicious བཟང་གིས་པའི། 吉祥的  
 begging སྒོང་བ། 乞求  
 bell ཇིལ་བྱ། 钟  
 belly ལྗང་བ། 肚子  
 birth རྐྱེས་པ། 出生  
 bomb འབར་འདེལ། 炸弹  
 bones ཟུག་པ། 骨头  
 boyfriend དགའ་ཤོགས། 男朋友  
 bracelet ལག་གཏུབ། 手镯  
 brick ས་ཕག་ 砖  
 bride བག་མ། 新娘  
 bubble ལྕ་བ། 泡  
 cage ཀཟེབ། 笼子  
 candle ལག་སྒྲིན། 蜡烛  
 coral རྩ་བ། 珊瑚  
 couple རྒྱ་ལྷག་ 夫妻  
 courtyard ར་སྐར། 庭院  
 crushed བཅིར་བ། 压碎  
 curtains ཡལ་བ། 窗帘  
 dagger སྒྲིན་ 匕首; 短剑  
 despite གང་སྟར། 不管, 尽管  
 disease རྩ་ཚ། 疾病  
 divination མ་འདེབས། 预言  
 divorce གཉན་འཛོན། 离婚  
 dragon འབྲུག་ 龙  
 drift དལ་བྱིས་ཡལ་བ། 漂移

embroidered གཙག་གུབ། 绣花; 刺绣  
 explode གསལ་བ། 爆炸  
 faint (adj) མག་མོག་ 模糊的  
 fashionable དར་བྱ་ཆེ་བའི། 流行的  
 fireworks ཤོག་ཐག་ 烟火  
 floating རྒྱས་འཁྱར་བ། 漂浮  
 foggy ལྷག་འཐེབས་པ། 雾气朦胧的  
 fold (v) རྒྱབ་པ། 折叠  
 goddess ལྷ་མོ། 女神  
 gossip ཉག་གཏམ། 闲话  
 groom མག་པ། 新郎  
 guard (v) རྒྱང་སྒྱུབ། 保护  
 guest མགྲོན་པོ། 客人  
 heartbeat རྩིང་ཐིང་བ། 心跳  
 hidden ཐུག་སྒྲུང། 隐藏的  
 incense བདུག་སྒོས། (烧)香  
 IV གནམ་ཁབ། 吊针, 点滴  
 ivory བ་སྒྲི། 象牙  
 jewelry རིན་པོ་ཆེ། 珠宝  
 juniper ཤིང་ལྷག་པ། 杜松, 柏树  
 knife བྱི་རྩུང། 刀  
 luck བསོད་ནམས། 运气  
 marvelous ཡ་མཚན་ཅན། 非凡的  
 matchmaker བར་བ། 媒人  
 messy མང་ཤིང་བཙོག་པ། 肮脏的  
 mysterious གསང་བ། 神秘的  
 naked གཅེར་བ། 赤裸裸的  
 necklace རྒྱ་ཁྱུན། 项链  
 nervous རེམས་འཚབ་པ། 担忧的  
 noon ཉིན་གུང། 中午  
 numb རུད་པ། 麻木  
 odor ཇི་མ། 气味  
 perform རྒྱུད་སྒྲོ་སྒྲུབ་པ། 表演  
 plate ཐེར་མ། 盘子  
 pregnant མངའ་ཆགས་པ། 怀孕的

proudly ར་རྒྱལ། 自豪地  
 recall ཐུར་བློན་ཐེད་པ། 回想  
 remind བློན་སྒྱལ། 使想起  
 rumor འཆལ་གཏམ། 谣言  
 rush འཚང་ཁག་ལ་འཚབ། 仓促完成  
 sash སྐ་རགས། 丝带  
 scholar མཁས་པ། 学者  
 silk དར་གྟི། 丝, 绸  
 sleeve སྤྱ་ཐུང་། 衣服袖子  
 snuck འཇབ་གྱོ། 偷偷溜去  
 stiff ཐུང་དྲ། 硬的  
 string སྦྱ་པ། 线, 细绳  
 swallow མེད་པ། 吞, 咽  
 swell སྐངས་པ། 肿胀  
 swollen སྐངས་པའི། 肿起的  
 thresh ཚར་མ་གཏུང་བ།

threshing ground གཡུལ་གཙོག་པ།  
 གཡུལ་ཀ 打(麦等);脱粒, 脱粒场  
 tidy གཤམ་དག་པའི། 整洁的  
 tobacco ཐ་མག་གི་ལོ་མ། 烟草  
 traditional སློལ་རྒྱན་གྱི། 传统的  
 ugly བཙོག་པ། 丑陋的  
 upward ཐུན་དུ། 向上的  
 vaguely ཅེས་གསལ་མེད་པར། 含糊地  
 waft བསེལ་རྒྱང་ཐེང་། 空中飘来的气味  
 wag གཡོ་བ། 摇摆  
 wedding གཉེན་ཚྭ། 婚礼  
 wipe འབྲིད་པ། 擦去  
 worse ཞན་པ། 更糟的  
 wrinkle (n) གཉེར་མ། 皱纹  
 zigzag རྒྱག་རྒྱག 弯弯曲曲的

Discuss these questions.

Do you think it is good for parents to arrange children's marriage?  
 What are the positive and negative things about arranged marriage?  
 Do you know anyone who has had a successful arranged marriage?  
 Do you know anyone who has had an unsuccessful arranged marriage?

#### WRITING

What kind of person do you want to marry? Why?

Fireworks exploded in the sky. Birds were terrified by the noise. The terrified birds flew away from the village. Like those terrified birds, a woman was leaving the village. She was adorned with coral and other jewels. She was going to another village. In the other village, she was going to marry a man. She had never met that man before. She was crying. Meanwhile, many children were laughing. They were laughing because people were throwing candies to them. In the east, the sun shone from behind a cloud. Sunlight struck the ground. The ground became gold. Despite the beautiful scene, that woman cried and cried.

...

The red sun began to rise over the mountain and people began waking. The village came to life. Hard-working women sat in front of their adobe stoves and made fires with dried yak dung. White smoke wafted into the warm air. The air filled with the odor of dung. Those women's messy hair hung down their backs.

The zigzag road to the village never changed. It looked like a rope stretched around the mountain. Livestock grazed on the green hills. The bright sunlight shone on the dust floating in the air around the animals. Wagging their tails, the animals seemed to be begging for food. A tall wall surrounded the village. This tall wall reminded villagers that their ancestors were soldiers. The descendants of those soldiers lived peacefully in the village, surrounded by the tall wall. Sunlight shone over the wall and into dark houses.

A poor couple and their son lived in the center of the village. Their house was neither big nor small. A big wooden gate was the entrance to the family home. Above the family's gate there was a bell. A new auspicious scarf wagged in the gentle wind that morning. Behind the gate, in the courtyard, was an incense altar. It stood in the middle of the courtyard. That incense altar looked like a soldier guarding the family. Bright sunlight came through the gate and snuck past that soldier. The sunlight fell on the adobe bed, and the bed became gold. The odor of juniper wafted in the air.

A pale wrinkled woman lay on the adobe bed. A pillow supported her feet, which stretched out from the quilt. Her feet were red and swollen. A divination had just been performed. That woman with red swollen feet would soon die. "Don't tell her. Keep it a secret." How sad. She was only fifty. That poor woman had once been a beautiful girl. What happened to her? Was her situation caused by disease or destiny?

Black clouds gathered in the sky while Deji's condition got worse. She knew she would die. She called all the family members together. She quietly said, "Let Dorji attend school. It is important."

Her husband gripped her hands tightly. "I promise I will let Dorji attend school." There was no sadness on his face, only determination. Slowly, Deji's hands became soft. Her soul drifted away.

...

A year passed. Three motorcycles arrived at a large threshing ground in the village center. The motorcycles carried a bride and six well-dressed men. Their motorcycles were adorned with white silk scarves. The men wore traditional Tibetan robes. They were adorned with silver daggers and golden jewelry. Some wore expensive coral necklaces. These unsmiling men usually did not wear such adornments. But today was a special day. As soon as the men got off the motorcycles, they were welcomed with liquor and white silk scarves.

A man held the white silk scarves. He was about fifty years old. He wore a green hat on his bald head. His body was covered in a new robe. The sleeves were folded up, and everyone could see his ivory prayer beads. The big shoes on his small feet seemed like a child wearing his



father's shoes. His ugly face was hidden in the shadow of his hat. An embroidered tobacco bag hung from his sash. The groom was not there. He was at home.

The guests entered a house near the threshing ground. A white scarf hung on the door. Faint Chinese and Tibetan writing on the door announced that the family had once had a scholar. The guests were seated. They looked carefully around the room. They saw a new Changhong TV covered with an embroidered cloth. There was a new DVD player below the TV. Embroidered curtains hung above the window. The floor was made from bricks. A table was covered with large plates of meat. The meat had a marvelous odor that wafted throughout the room. A colored picture of a holy man hung on a white wall. Through the open door a motorcycle could be seen.

The bride's father smiled. Milk-tea was poured into new bowls. Meanwhile, the bride bent her heavily adorned head. It seemed she had no neck bones. No one in the groom's home saw what she looked like. "With the gods' protection, with the stars' help, through our agreement, we gather here hoping for descendants. You brought a daughter from the goddesses," said Dorji's father. Then he put a white silk scarf around the bride's neck. She didn't move and she didn't say anything.

Her heart was crushed. The man's words felt like a knife in her heart. She began crying. Crying at a wedding is bad luck. Because of this, the wedding finished quickly. Fifteen dragon bowls and five thousand *yuan* were paid to the bride's family. Then, the guests unhappily left. "What happened? What is the matter with the bride?" Though all the guests were sad, the village children played happily around the house, laughing.

Night fell. The bride and groom sat close to each other on an adobe bed. Neither said anything. The groom was eighteen. He was excited. But, he was also nervous. He was excited by the idea, but nervous about the reality. He blew out the candle next to the adobe bed. Unwillingly, she let him...

...

Three months later, the autumn harvest was almost finished. The groom's father, Pengmao, saw the bride's belly swell. They took good care of her. The old father now happily believed that his family line would continue. The family treated the pregnant bride well. She enjoyed delicious food. Unexpectedly, she gave birth five months after her marriage. Everybody was amazed. There was much gossip and many rumors in the village.

The bride sat with her new baby. She smiled. She recalled what had happened nine months earlier. She and her boyfriend Tsering lay naked together. They were happy and didn't think about the future. Rain fell outside her window. Sadness was far from her heart.

Dorji divorced her. He kicked her and the baby out. She went to live somewhere else with her child. Her name was ruined.

...

A year passed. Dorji worked in a distant town. He returned with four thousand *yuan* and some gifts for his father. He was handsome and tidy. His hair looked very fashionable. He wore a black suit.

"My dearest son," his father called. He hugged Dorji. Though Dorji looked very different, Pengmao still looked the same. However, he now had more wrinkles on his forehead. Dorji and Pengmao ate dinner together.

"I visited uncle Tashi's home," Pengmao said to Dorji.

"For what?" asked Dorji.

"To organize your future," his father said proudly.

"My future? Please don't speak about my future," said Dorji. He had been happy to return

home, but now he was suddenly sad. His face changed color. It became cold and pale.

"I have organized a wedding for you," said Pengmao.

Pengmao's words exploded like a bomb in Dorji's brain. He began crying. Tears fell like beads from a broken string of prayer beads. He quickly wiped his eyes. He did not want his father to see his tears. His eyes were red. Anger rose in his heart. However, he couldn't change his fate. The wedding was arranged.

...

The matchmaker and the bride's relatives arrived. Dorji's sisters also arrived. They were adorned with beautiful jewelry – gold rings, ivory bracelets, and coral necklaces. They walked with their noses in the air. Dorji's sisters were both beautiful and arrogant. They had come to see the new bride.

Dorji's head was nearly between his knees. He was thinking of the year that his dear mother had died. One noon, the sky was clear and blue. The red sun hung in the blue sky. Dorji was cleaning the classroom floor. This was punishment from his teacher, because he had been absent from class. Dorji had been absent from class because he had much work to do at home. After his mother died, Dorji had to help the family. He needed to milk three cows, make milk tea and breakfast for his father, and take the family's sheep to the mountains. He needed to do all this every morning before school. So, he was often late for class and his teacher often punished him.

Dorji's father arrived at school. He saw his son cleaning the classroom. "My son is not a servant! He came here to study, not to work for you!" he yelled. His face became red. Students gathered to watch Pengmao yell at Dorji's teacher. Dorji didn't understand what was happening. He didn't understand what his father was doing. What was Pengmao's secret purpose? Pengmao yelled and yelled at the teacher. Eventually, he took Dorji home. Dorji never saw a classroom again.

Now, he was getting married a second time. The odor of meat, butter, and liquor wafted in the air. People laughed and chatted. Everybody was enjoying themselves, except Dorji.

Dorji snuck out of the room. He walked out of the village. He went to the town and stayed there sadly. Meanwhile, the bride remained alone in Pengmao's home. A secret voice told her, "Run! Go home!" Eventually she ran away. Where would she go? Where should she go?

Pengmao was full of sadness. His son and his son's wife had both escaped. Pengmao became sick with a mysterious disease.

As soon as he heard the news, Dorji rushed home. He rode a horse through pouring rain. He was cold and his teeth were chattering. His face was red and his hands were numb. The rain hid the tears that ran down his cheeks.

When he arrived home, Dorji saw his father. Pengmao lay on the bed. His body was stiff and cold. His face was pale. His eyes were open, but Pengmao was already dead. Dorji closed his father's eyes. They would never see the world again.

Dorji fainted. His heartbeat became weak.

Dorji vaguely saw his parents walking together. They walked towards him on a foggy road. They had big smiles on their faces. Dorji tried to see them clearly, but he couldn't. He reached out to touch them, but he couldn't. He tried to go to them, but an iron cage swallowed them. Dorji yelled, "No!" He suddenly awoke. He looked around. He was in a hospital room. An IV bottle hung above him. Small bubbles in the bottle drifted upward, exploded, and disappeared.

Dorji closed his eyes again. Again, he saw his parents in the iron cage. He reached out his hands and touched the cold iron. He tightly gripped the iron. Slowly, he began destroying the cage.

VOCABULARY EXERCISES
----------------------

Match the word to its meaning.

- |               |  |
|---------------|--|
| 1. absent     | _____ 12:00 in the day.                |
| 2. adornments | _____ Something to smoke.              |
| 3. auspicious | _____ Get bigger.                      |
| 4. boyfriend  | _____ No feeling.                      |
| 5. coral      | _____ Not there.                       |
| 6. dragon     | _____ Can't bend.                      |
| 7. incense    | _____ Precious red stone.              |
| 8. matchmaker | _____ Tie it around your waist.        |
| 9. noon       | _____ Move in the air.                 |
| 10. sash      | _____ Jewelry, beautiful clothes, etc. |
| 11. stiff     | _____ Lucky.                           |
| 12. tobacco   | _____ He arranges a wedding.           |
| 13. waft      | _____ A girl loves him.                |
| 14. swell     | _____ It causes rain and thunder.      |
| 15. numb      | _____ It smells nice when you burn it. |

Choose an A word and a B word and write sentences.

A: arranged attend begging drift guard recall remind swell waft wag wipe explode  
B: adornments ancestors bell bomb bones cage courtyard dagger wedding sleeve sash

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_

Can you find twenty new words?

HE G E M T A I A S O Z R T T  
R H M L Z Y Z Z S L N O D R O  
T S E B A I S L E G Y R A E O  
T A A A R Y G T N V E I N K N  
E K F N R O L Z E N U A L B R  
L A N O I T I D A R T T L U G  
E K L I S F B D U G I K M N A  
C S U H F L G E E O P O C S A  
A F W S D E G N A R R A U E A  
R A B A N I R C A T E P L S E  
B R I F L O A T I N G D D I L  
V A G U E L Y G E S N E C N I  
I A N E R V O U S A A D O B E  
A S E R S G A W C C N A G T D  
O N W N L F M F T A T U B E T

GRAMMAR EXERCISES
-------------------

Fill in the gaps with pronouns.

Dorji vaguely saw \_\_\_\_\_ parents walking together. \_\_\_\_\_ walked towards \_\_\_\_\_ on a foggy road. \_\_\_\_\_ had big smiles on their faces. Dorji tried to see \_\_\_\_\_ clearly, but \_\_\_\_\_ couldn't. \_\_\_\_\_ reached out to touch \_\_\_\_\_, but \_\_\_\_\_ couldn't. \_\_\_\_\_ tried to go to \_\_\_\_\_, but an iron cage swallowed \_\_\_\_\_. Dorji yelled, "No!" \_\_\_\_\_ suddenly awoke. \_\_\_\_\_ looked around. \_\_\_\_\_ was in a hospital room. An IV bottle hung above \_\_\_\_\_. Small bubbles in the bottle drifted upward, exploded, and disappeared.

Fill in the gaps with conjunctions: and, though, but, or, because.

\_\_\_\_\_ Dorji looked very different, Pengmao still looked the same.  
A poor couple \_\_\_\_\_ their son lived in the center of the village.  
Dorji tried to see them clearly, \_\_\_\_\_ he couldn't.  
He had been happy to return home, \_\_\_\_\_ now he was suddenly sad.  
He was excited by the idea, \_\_\_\_\_ nervous about the reality.  
Her feet were red \_\_\_\_\_ swollen.  
His eyes were open, \_\_\_\_\_ Pengmao was already dead.  
She didn't move \_\_\_\_\_ she didn't say anything.  
Sunlight shone over the wall \_\_\_\_\_ into dark houses.  
They were laughing \_\_\_\_\_ people were throwing candies to them.  
Was her situation caused by disease \_\_\_\_\_ destiny?

Fill in the gaps with prepositions.

Fireworks exploded \_\_\_\_\_ the sky. Birds were terrified by the noise. The terrified birds flew away \_\_\_\_\_ the village. Like those terrified birds, a woman was leaving the village. She was adorned \_\_\_\_\_ coral and other jewels. She was going \_\_\_\_\_ another village. \_\_\_\_\_ the other village, she was going to marry a man. She had never met that man before. She was crying. Meanwhile, many children were laughing. They were laughing because people were throwing candies to them. \_\_\_\_\_ the east, the sun shone \_\_\_\_\_ behind a cloud. Sunlight struck the ground. The ground became gold. Despite the beautiful scene, that woman cried and cried.

Choose the correct verb tense.

Dorji's head was nearly between his knees. He (is/was/are) (thought/think/thinking) of the year that his dear mother had (dead/died). One noon, the sky (were/was) clear and blue. The red sun (hang/hung) in the blue sky. Dorji (is/was) (cleaned/cleaning) the classroom floor. This (was/is) punishment from his teacher, because he had (be/been) absent from class. Dorji had (be/been) absent from class because he had much work to do at home. After his mother (dead/died), Dorji had to (helped/help/helping) the family. He needed to (milking/milk) three cows, (made/make) milk tea and breakfast for his father, and (took/take) the family's sheep to the mountains. He (need/needed) to (done/do) all this every morning before school. So, he (was/is) often late for class and his teacher often (punished/punish) him.

Write capital letters, commas, and full stops.

the bride's father smiled milk-tea was poured into new bowls meanwhile, the bride bent her heavily adorned head it seemed she had no neck bones no one in the groom's home saw what she looked like "with the gods' protection, with the stars' help through our agreement we gather here hoping for descendants you brought a daughter from the goddesses" said dorji's father then he put a white silk scarf around the bride's neck she didn't move and she didn't say anything

Fill the gaps with: on, with, near, from, above, throughout, around, below, through  
The guests entered a house \_\_\_\_\_ the threshing ground. A white scarf hung \_\_\_\_\_ the door. Faint Chinese and Tibetan writing \_\_\_\_\_ the door announced that the family had once had a scholar. The guests were seated. They looked carefully \_\_\_\_\_ the room. They saw a new Changhong TV covered \_\_\_\_\_ an embroidered cloth. There was a new DVD player \_\_\_\_\_ the TV. Embroidered curtains hung \_\_\_\_\_ the window. The floor was made \_\_\_\_\_ bricks. A table was covered \_\_\_\_\_ large plates of meat. The meat had a marvelous odor that wafted \_\_\_\_\_ the room. A colored picture of a holy man hung \_\_\_\_\_ a white wall. \_\_\_\_\_ the open door a motorcycle could be seen.

QUESTIONS ABOUT THE TEXT
--------------------------

Comprehension Questions

1. What was grazing on the hills on Dorji's first wedding day?
2. What did the tall wall remind the villagers of?
3. What was in the middle of the courtyard?
4. Who is Deji?
5. What were the three men on the motorcycles wearing?
6. The tables on the wedding days were covered with what kind of food?
7. How much money was given to the bride's family at Dorji's first wedding?
8. Who is Tsering?
9. What did Dorji's return home with one year after leaving?
10. Who did Pengmao yell at?
11. What did Dorji do during his second wedding?
12. What did Pengmao look like when Dorji arrived home?
13. What happened when Dorji realized his father was dead?
14. Who did Dorji see in the golden cage?
15. What hung on the wall of Dorji's first wife's house?
16. What did Dorji look like when he came home from the distant town?
17. Why did Dorji divorce his first wife?
18. Why was Dorji always late for school?
19. How old was Dorji at his first marriage?
20. What did Dorji's father put around the young bride's neck at the first wedding?

Discussion Questions

1. What do you think the cage at the end of the story symbolizes?
2. What are your thoughts on arranged marriage? Is it a good tradition or not?
3. Discuss the relationship between Dorji and his father. What is your relationship with your parents like?
4. If you could change something about this story, have Dorji make a different decision or change the ending what would you change and why?
5. What do you think happened to Dorji's first bride? What usually happens to women in this kind of situation? What do you think happened to Dorji's second wife?

True or False?

1. There was a bell above the family gate.
2. Dorji's father had an ugly face.
3. It is good luck to cry at a wedding.
4. Dorji's wife's baby was born six months after the wedding.
5. Dorji was happy that his father had arranged a second marriage for him.
6. Dorji's sisters were arrogant and beautiful.
7. Dorji had to clean the classroom.
8. Pengmao became sick with a disease after Dorji's second wedding.
9. After Dorji heard about his father's illness he came home riding a motorcycle.
10. Pengmao was already dead when Dorji arrived home.

WRITING

What happened to Dorji's first wife and her child? Write a story.



# UNIT FIVE

A CAT'S TEAR, A CHILD'S CRY

by Shawu Dundrup Dorjee

# PREPARATORY EXERCISES

Study this vocabulary before you read the text.

asleep གནིང་ལྷག་པ། 沉睡

altar མཚན་ཁྲི། 圣坛

Avalokiteshvara འཕགས་པ་སྤྱན་རས་གཟིགས།

bald མྱ་ཐར། རྒྱང་དམར། 光秃的，单调的

bark (v) ཟུག་པ། 咆哮，犬叫

barn འབྲུ་ཁང། 谷仓，车库

blanket ཕྱར་བ། 毛毯

breath འབྲིན་རྒྱུ་བ། 呼吸，气息

breathe དུགས་འབྲིན། 呼吸

bump བརྒལ་བ། 碰撞，撞击

burst གས་པ། 爆发，突发

chant བྱར་བ། 诵扬

chase རྩོམ་འདྲེད་པ། 追赶

chores ཁྱིམ་ལས། 杂务

cloth རས།

clothes རས་ཆས། གོས། 布

corner གྲུ་ཟུར། 角落

delicious ཞིམ་མངར། 美味的

destined བསྐོ་བ། 注定

dirty མི་གཙང་བ། 肮脏的

electric wire སྒྲིག་སྒྱུ། 电线

evil འདྲེ་ངན་པ། 邪恶的

fry ལྷུ་མ་སྟེག་པ། 油炸

funny སྒྲིལ་ལྡན་པའི།

fun ཀུ་རེ། 滑稽的

fur བགས་པ། 皮，毛皮

gradually རིམ་བྱེས། 逐渐地

grain འབྲུ། 粮食

graze ཕུགས་འཚོ་བ། 放牧

household ཁྱིམ་ཚང། 一家人

hum ལུམ་/ལྷ་སྟེ། 哼声，咩

hurt མས་པ། 受伤

intestines རྩུ་མ། 肠

karma ལས་འབྲས། 因缘

lap བང། 膝盖

mantra རྒྱལ་མ། 咒语

meanwhile ཏུས་དང་མཉམ་དུ། 同时

misfortune གོལ་ཆགས། 不幸

mooing ཏུར་བ། 发出哞哞声

mucus བེ་སྐབས། 粘液

mule རེལ། 驴

naughty བྱ་ཆག་པའི། 顽皮的

pillar ཀ་བ། 柱子

pillow རུས་མགོ། 枕头

poison ཏུག་པ། 毒药

pollute བཙོག་བརྒྱུ། 污染

powder བྱ་མ། 粉末

prayer གསོལ་འདེབས། 祈祷

ripped གཤག་པ། 撕碎的

roar ང་རྟ། 咆哮

rope ཐག་པ། 绳索

scratching འབད་པ། 划伤

shelf བང་ཁྲི། 架子

shrine མཚན་ཁང། 神殿

sin རྩོག་པ། 过失，罪恶

slam བརྒལ་སྒྲ། 砰地关上

stare ཅེར་ཀླ། 注视

stick འབུད་ཤིང། 柴火

sticky འབྱར་བག་ཅན། 粘的

storehouse མཚོན་ཁང། 仓库

tail ར་མ། 尾巴

tranquil ལ་ཁྱ་མིམ་པ། 安静的

twisted གཙམ་བསྐྱེམས་བརྒྱབ་པའི། 扭曲的

unexpectedly སྒྲ་ཡུལ་ལས་འདས་པ། སྒྲ་བྱུང་བ། 出乎意料地

vinegar རྩུར་ཁུ། 醋

vomit རྩུག་པ། 呕吐

weird རྒྱང་མཚར་པ། 怪异的

wrap རུམ་རྒྱག་པ། 包起来

Study these expressions.

Icy winds cut the air. གང་ངར་ཤིན་དུ་རྩོ་བ།

Do not treat me like an animal [like an idiot, like a child...]. ང་ལ་མཐོང་ཚུང་མ་བྱེད། ང་རང་གློན་པར་མ་བསམ།

Discuss these questions.

What animals does your family have?

How do they treat those animals?

Do young people and old people ever misunderstand each other?

Did anyone ever blame you for something unfairly?

WRITING
---------

How are animals different from people?

"Put down that dirty animal! It's been in dirty places and touched many dirty things," said Father loudly. Father was holding a bowl of noodles. The gray cat seemed to understand Father. It jumped from Sanggo's lap and went under the table.

Sanggo looked angrily at Father.

"You foolish boy, Sanggo! Don't you know that every family has put out poison for mice? After some days, this cat will eat a poisoned mouse and die, just like the cat before," said Mother. She took Sanggo's empty bowl and filled it with noodles.

"But the cat is very useful. If you don't want the cat to die, we should tie it to a house pillar. Then it won't go anywhere and it won't eat poisoned mice," replied Sanggo.

There was dead silence for a moment. Then Grandfather said, "It is unfair to tie up this animal."

Everything outside the house was tranquil. The village seemed full of sadness.

Suddenly, there was a loud noise. It was the door slamming. Then, a dog barked loudly as if it had seen a ghost. Uncle Duoba entered the room, wearing a hat and a robe. The robe was covered in dust. He sat on a blanket in the corner of the room near the stove. He chatted with Grandfather.

After a while, they heard a strange sound. It was a scratching sound, like somebody scratching on wood. The gray cat walked past them a moment later. The cat's tail was raised in the air.

"Wow, where did you get this cat? My family needs one. Mice have eaten much of our grain. I should search for a hunter to kill them," said Uncle Duoba. Then he patted the cat.

"Sanggo traded the cat for an old bicycle. Several days ago, Sanggo's cousin came here from a remote mountain village. He saw the bike and fell in love with it. Even though the bike was only trash, his cousin wanted it. So he gave Sanggo this cat for the bicycle," replied Grandmother. Then she chanted a mantra and moved her beads in her hand.

...

The sun set behind Degang Mountain. The weather became cold. It was the second day of New Year. This year, the village was covered in snow. Icy winds cut the air.

Drolma, a yak, and a mule were returning from grazing. The yak was mooing and the mule was being naughty. Drolma couldn't control it. These were the only livestock that the family possessed - one yak and a mule with no tail. A man had cut off the mule's tail last year, because the mule went into his field. Drolma beat the mule with a rope. It lazily walked home.

A moment later, Drolma entered the living room. She beat her coat and dust rose in the air. She looked around the room. She saw her grandmother looking for something. Then she sat down near the stove. She took a bowl of tea and drank it.

Suddenly, Sanggo ran into the living room. He was holding a stick. The gray cat chased him. Drolma ran to the cat and picked it up. She patted its head.

"Sister, the cat chased my stick everywhere. It even ran in circles!" Sanggo said happily.

"Really? It sounds very funny. Can you show me?" asked Drolma. She put the cat down. Then Sanggo pointed the stick at the cat. The cat jumped forward. It tried to catch the stick. Sanggo quickly moved the stick and the cat chased it. Sanggo moved the stick in a circle, and the cat ran in a circle. Drolma laughed noisily. Her body shook with laughter. She tried to cover her mouth with her hands. Grandmother also laughed, showing her old teeth. The house filled with happy laughter.

After dinner, it was very quiet outside and inside the home. It was as if someone had died.

"Where is that cat? Don't let him on the altar in the shrine room. He'll drink holy water

and pollute the holy things there," said Mother. She was sweeping the wooden floor.

"Poor little animal! One day it will eat a poisoned mouse and die. *Om mani padme hum*. What if the cat dies?" said Grandmother. She put sticks into the stove. The fire danced inside the stove.

"Is it wrong to help a family protect a few handfuls of grain? If that is a sin, how about households who kill pigs to eat?" Sanggo said. Then he jumped up. He went to look for the cat.

After a while, he heard a scratching noise. Drolma jumped up. She went to the storehouse door. She opened the door. The gray cat came inside. The cat looked happy. They noticed some gray fur in the left corner of its bloody mouth. The cat walked to the *kang* and lay between two pillows. Then, after some minutes of chanting the mantra of Avalokiteshvara, the cat fell asleep.

"Sanggo, sleep on the *kang* tonight. We will help Uncle Duoba's family fry bread all night. We will stay at his home. We won't stay here. So, sleep on the *kang* with Drolma, otherwise, she will be afraid of the dark," Father said. Then he left with Mother.

It was ten o'clock. The TV show began. Horrible January winds roared outside. Sanggo and Drolma sat together near the stove and watched the exciting TV show. But suddenly, coughing from the *kang* disturbed them. Sanggo looked towards the *kang*. He felt afraid. He wondered if a ghost had come. Then he closed his eyes. He turned on the light. Then he opened his eyes while chanting a mantra. Sanggo knew that ghosts vanish when they hear mantra. But instead of a ghost, the gray cat was there. The little gray cat was vomiting – something sticky, round, blackish, with gray fur. Although it looked weird, Sanggo wasn't afraid any more. It was just the cat, not a ghost.

"What's that brother? What's wrong with the cat? It was OK several minutes ago," Drolma asked slowly. Drolma and Sanggo were totally frozen for a second. Then, Sanggo got a stick. He put the end of the stick into the horrible vomit.

In the cat's vomit was the body of mouse. The mouse was wrapped in some sort of mucus. Sanggo guessed the mucus was from the cat's intestines. That meant that the cat's intestines were ripped and broken. Meanwhile, the poor cat was shaking. Blood flowed from the cat's mouth. The blood was darker than normal blood. Sanggo realized that the cat had eaten a poisoned mouse.

Sanggo had never seen anything so horrible. He just stared at it. It breathed in and out weakly. Drolma was silent. The only sounds were the roar of the wind and the singing on the TV. Then suddenly, the cat jumped into the air. Then, it rolled around on the *kang*. It twisted its body in every direction. Suddenly, the cat stood up, and walked into the wall, bumping its head. Was it mad? What was happening? Then the cat sat down weakly. It was breathing strangely. Tears rolled from its eyes.

Unexpectedly, the living-room door opened. Sanggo and Drolma were surprised. Grandmother entered, "It's almost one o'clock. What are you two doing?"

"The cat ate a poisoned mouse! It vomited. It seems to be dying. What should we do?" Sanggo asked.

"It was destined by its karma. There is nothing we can do. Get to bed and leave this alone," Grandmother said. Then she left.

Sanggo and Drolma were confused. They tried to follow their grandmother's suggestions. They turned off the light and went to bed. However, the cat continued making strange noises. Sanggo turned on the light and looked at the cat. It was sitting weirdly. It tried to stand but it couldn't. It tried to sit but it couldn't. Sanggo and Drolma could see suffering in the cat's eyes.

"Let's beat its head with a stone. Then it will die quickly," said Drolma quietly. Sanggo

was surprised by her suggestion. He didn't reply.

The cat continued making horrible noises. It continued behaving strangely. This was the first time Sanggo had seen an animal's tear. Sanggo wrapped the cat in a cloth and put it between the pillows. He turned the light off. At that time, the cat was silent. As Sanggo fell asleep, he realized that the cat would be dead when he woke up.

When Sanggo woke up, the sun was in the sky. Mother was doing her chores as usual. Everything seemed normal. Sanggo looked at the cat. It still wasn't dead. Unfortunately, it was still suffering. It breathed quietly. It didn't move at all.

Later that day, the cat quietly died.

...

A week after the cat's death, Drolma was thinking about the cat. Was it in Hell? Was it suffering? When Drolma thought about it, she wanted to chant mantra. She took her prayer beads and began chanting. She sat down on the cloth they used to wrap the cat in when it was dying.

"Don't sit on that cloth! It will bring misfortune to you!" Grandmother yelled angrily at Drolma. Drolma stood up and Grandmother took the cloth.

"Why are you so angry? What's wrong?" she said.

"Last night, I had a horrible dream. I saw the dead cat and your brother playing together. The cat was holding a stick in front of Sanggo. Sanggo was trying to catch the stick. He was running in circles, just like the cat used to," Grandmother said. Then she left.

After hearing this, Drolma looked at Degang Mountain. She thought about Sanggo. He was herding the yak on the mountain. Animals had eaten all the grass on the mountain. The mountain looked like a bald head. Drolma felt sad when she looked at the mountain. She had a strange feeling – somebody was going to die.

A crow was on the electric wire over the house. It looked at Drolma, and made an evil noise. Suddenly the gate opened and Aunt Kadro entered. She was breathing quickly. Her forehead was covered in sweat. Her face was read. She said, "Your... your yak..." Grandmother ran to Aunt Kadro, "What happened?"

Aunt Kadro took a deep breath. She said, "Your yak fell off the mountain. It died. Some men are carrying it home now. "

Grandmother looked angry when she heard the news. She said, "I knew there would be a problem. We should have invited monks to chant. But nobody listened to me!" Then Gradmother went inside the house.

A little later, Drolma was waiting near the gate. She saw a shadow near the gate. It was Sanggo. He looked tired. He was covered in dust. After him, some men carried the dead yak. It looked horrible. The yak's stomach had burst when it fell. Its intestines were hanging out.

Everybody was very silent. Suddenly, Grandmother started yelling at Sanggo, "You are seventeen years old! You are a man, not a child. Don't you know how to take care of a yak? Now we only have on mule in our family! You have destroyed our family!"

"I just made one mistake. Do not treat me like an animal! Didn't you make mistakes in your childhood?" Sanggo cried. Then he ran away.

At dinner time, everyone was sitting around the table. Sanggo was not there. Drolma went out to look for him. The food looked delicious, but nobody wanted to eat it – it was meat from their yak.

"Aaaah!" They heard Drolma's scream from the barn. Everybody ran into the barn. Sanggo was lying on the ground. Drolma was holding some white powder in her hand.

"Sanggo ate this poison!" said Drolma.

"Sanggo! Try to vomit! Put your fingers down your throat! Oh, you foolish boy. We didn't mean to hurt you!" Mother shouted. She grabbed Sanggo and shook him.

"Vinegar! Bring vinegar!" Grandmother yelled.

"Vinegar? What is it for?" Drolma asked.

"Vinegar will make him vomit. He will vomit all the poison. Then he won't die. Hurry! Bring vinegar!" said Grandmother.

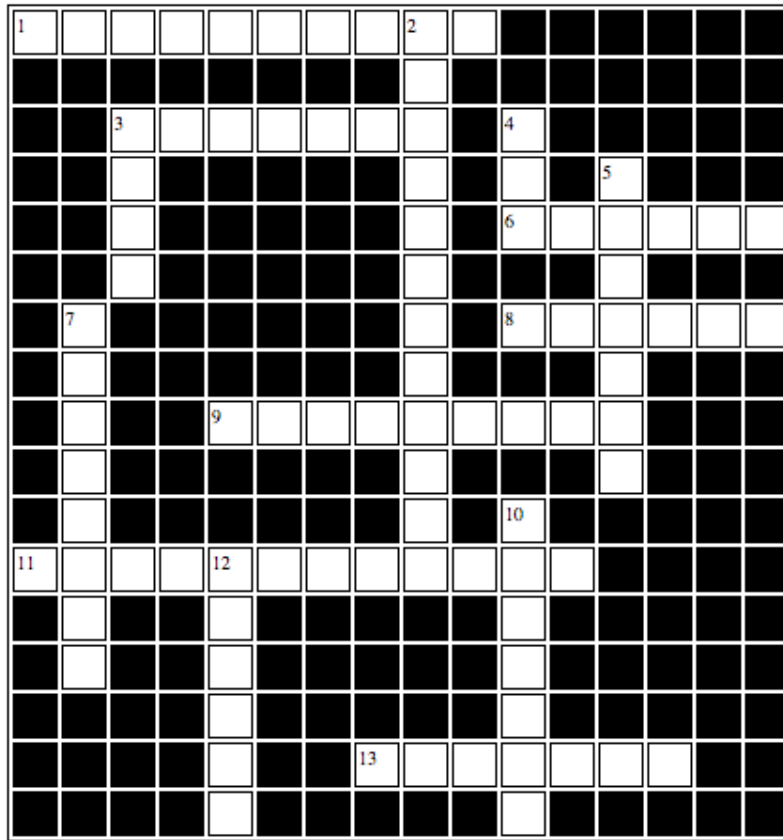
Drolma was shocked. If Grandmother had said this several days ago, the cat would not have died. They could have given vinegar to the cat. It would have vomited all the poison. Drolma walked into the kitchen. Strangely, she found it difficult to walk, like someone was holding her legs.

Slowly, step by step, she got to the kitchen. She went to the shelf, but the vinegar wasn't there. Drolma looked around the room. She saw Sanggo sitting on the *kang*. He was holding the gray cat. The gray cat was drinking vinegar from a small dish. The cat looked at Drolma and said, "This vinegar is very delicious. I hope I can be born as a human in my next life. Then I can drink lots of vinegar."

Drolma was shocked. She looked again and saw the cat holding a stick. Sanggo was chasing after it.

Gradually, they vanished. They were gone.

# VOCABULARY EXERCISES



## Across

1. Like sausages inside your body.
3. Air comes into and goes out of your body.
6. It supports the roof.
8. Religious words that you chant.
9. At the same time.
11. You didn't know something would happen.
13. A brown liquid. You put it on noodles.

## Down

2. It brings electricity to your house.
3. The noise a dog makes.
4. When you stand up, it disappears.
5. You sleep under it.
7. Couldn't change it.
10. You wear them.
12. You put your head on it when you sleep.

Spell the words correctly.

ctohl \_\_\_\_\_  
 fynun \_\_\_\_\_  
 hmu \_\_\_\_\_  
 kmaar \_\_\_\_\_  
 mienutrofs \_\_\_\_\_

monigo \_\_\_\_\_  
 pionos \_\_\_\_\_  
 pdorwe \_\_\_\_\_  
 rpidpe \_\_\_\_\_  
 sctkiy \_\_\_\_\_



Match the word with its opposite.

- |            |       |          |
|------------|-------|----------|
| 1. asleep  | _____ | obedient |
| 2. bald    | _____ | virtue   |
| 3. dirty   | _____ | hairy    |
| 4. evil    | _____ | help     |
| 5. naughty | _____ | awake    |
| 6. pollute | _____ | good     |
| 7. sin     | _____ | head     |
| 8. tail    | _____ | clean    |
| 9. vomit   | _____ | purify   |
| 10. hurt   | _____ | eat      |

Match the word with its synonym.

- |              |       |              |
|--------------|-------|--------------|
| 1. household | _____ | slowly       |
| 2. stare     | _____ | bang         |
| 3. slam      | _____ | family       |
| 4. burst     | _____ | collide with |
| 5. chores    | _____ | tasty        |
| 6. gradually | _____ | strange      |
| 7. delicious | _____ | explode      |
| 8. tranquil  | _____ | housework    |
| 9. weird     | _____ | quiet        |
| 10. bump     | _____ | gaze         |

Fill in the gaps.

funny, fun, cloth, clothes, altar, shrine

1. We all had a really \_\_\_\_\_ time at the party last night.
2. Can you buy me some \_\_\_\_\_ so I can make a new robe?
3. Every morning she lights seven butter lamp on the \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Inside the \_\_\_\_\_ are pictures of deities and lamas.
5. He is a really \_\_\_\_\_ person – he always makes people laugh.
6. Do I need to bring warm \_\_\_\_\_ when we visit Canada?

Change the word form.

- chant → noun: \_\_\_\_\_
- delicious → noun: \_\_\_\_\_
- dirty → noun: \_\_\_\_\_
- gradually → adjective: \_\_\_\_\_
- hum → noun: \_\_\_\_\_
- weird → noun: \_\_\_\_\_
- vomit → noun: \_\_\_\_\_
- prayer → verb: \_\_\_\_\_
- pollute → noun: \_\_\_\_\_

GRAMMAR EXERCISES
-------------------

Fill the gaps with do, did, don't, didn't, doing.

What should we \_\_\_\_\_?

\_\_\_\_\_ not treat me like an animal!

He \_\_\_\_\_ reply.

It \_\_\_\_\_ move at all.

Mother was \_\_\_\_\_ her chores as usual.

\_\_\_\_\_ sit on that cloth!

There is nothing we can \_\_\_\_\_.

We \_\_\_\_\_ mean to hurt you!

What are you two \_\_\_\_\_?

\_\_\_\_\_ let him on the altar in the shrine room.

Wow, where \_\_\_\_\_ you get this cat?

Fill the gaps with: get, make, bring, take.

\_\_\_\_\_ to bed and leave this alone.

\_\_\_\_\_ vinegar!

Didn't you \_\_\_\_\_ mistakes in your childhood?

Don't you know how to \_\_\_\_\_ care of a yak!

It will \_\_\_\_\_ misfortune to you!

Vinegar will \_\_\_\_\_ him vomit.

Wow, where did you \_\_\_\_\_ this cat?

Fill the gaps with: in, at, into, out, on, from, up, down.

Sanggo had never seen anything so horrible. He just stared \_\_\_\_\_ it. It breathed

\_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ weakly. Drolma was silent. The only sounds were the roar of the

wind and the singing \_\_\_\_\_ the TV. Then suddenly, the cat jumped \_\_\_\_\_ the air.

Then, it rolled around \_\_\_\_\_ the *kang*. It twisted its body \_\_\_\_\_ every direction.

Suddenly, the cat stood \_\_\_\_\_, and walked \_\_\_\_\_ the wall, bumping its head. Was

it mad? What was happening? Then the cat sat \_\_\_\_\_ weakly. It was breathing strangely.

Tears rolled \_\_\_\_\_ its eyes.

Choose the correct verb form.

It was ten o'clock. The TV show (began/beginning). Horrible January winds (roar/roared) outside. Sanggo and Drolma (sit/sat) together near the stove and (watch/watched) the exciting TV show. But suddenly, coughing from the *kang* (disturb/disturbed) them. Sanggo (look/looked) towards the *kang*. He (feel/felt) afraid. He (wonder/wondered) if a ghost had come. Then he (close/closed) his eyes. He (turn/turned) on the light. Then he (open/opened) his eyes while chanting a mantra. Sanggo (know/knew) that ghosts vanish when they (hear/heard) mantra. But instead of a ghost, the gray cat (is/was) there. The little gray cat (is/was) (vomiting/vomited) – something sticky, round, blackish, with gray fur. Although it (look/looked) weird, Sanggo wasn't afraid any more. It (is/was) just the cat, not a ghost.

Fill the gaps with: a, the.

After \_\_\_\_\_ while, he heard \_\_\_\_\_ scratching noise. Drolma jumped up. She went to \_\_\_\_\_ storehouse door. She opened \_\_\_\_\_ door. \_\_\_\_\_ gray cat came inside. \_\_\_\_\_ cat looked happy. They noticed some gray fur in \_\_\_\_\_ left corner of its bloody mouth. The cat walked to \_\_\_\_\_ *kang* and lay between two pillows. Then, after some minutes of chanting \_\_\_\_\_ mantra of Avalokiteshvara, \_\_\_\_\_ cat fell asleep.

Suddenly, there was \_\_\_\_\_ loud noise. It was \_\_\_\_\_ door slamming. Then, \_\_\_\_\_ dog barked loudly as if it had seen \_\_\_\_\_ ghost. Uncle Duoba entered \_\_\_\_\_ room, wearing \_\_\_\_\_ hat and \_\_\_\_\_ robe. \_\_\_\_\_ robe was covered in dust. He sat on \_\_\_\_\_ blanket in \_\_\_\_\_ corner of \_\_\_\_\_ room near \_\_\_\_\_ stove. He chatted with Grandfather.

Write capital letters, commas, and full stops.

after hearing this, drolma looked at degang mountain she thought about sanggo he was herding the yak on the mountain animals had eaten all the grass on the mountain the mountain looked like a bald head drolma felt sad when she looked at the mountain dhe had a strange feeling – somebody was going to die

QUESTIONS ABOUT THE TEXT
--------------------------

Comprehension Questions

1. Why did Father ask Sanggo to put down the cat?
2. Where did Sanggo's cat come from?
3. Apart from the cat, what animals did Sanggo's family own?
4. Who chanted the mantra of Avalokiteshvara?
5. What did Grandmother think of the cat?
6. Where did Sanggo's mother and father go one night?
7. Why did Sanggo think a ghost had come?
8. Why did the cat get sick?
9. What did Grandmother say to Sanggo and Drolma when the cat was sick?
10. What was the cat doing when Sanggo woke up?
11. Who is Kadro?
12. Describe Grandmother's dream about Sanggo and the cat.
13. What did villagers do on Degang Mountain?
14. What happened to Sanggo's family's yak?
15. What did Grandmother do when she heard about the yak?
16. Why didn't the family want to eat dinner?
17. Why did Grandmother yell, "Bring vinegar!"
18. Why did Sanggo eat poison?
19. Why was Drolma shocked when Grandmother asked them to bring vinegar?
20. What did Drolma see when she went into the kitchen?

Discussion Questions

1. How did Sanggo's family treat him? How do you feel about that?
2. How do you feel about the grandmother in this story?
3. This story talks a lot about killing animals. What does the author think about killing animals? What do you think?

True or False?

1. The cat died.
2. The yak died.
3. Sanggo's cousin lived in a mountain village.
4. Drolma is Sanggo's mother.
5. Degang Mountain was the village's herding place.
6. Drinking a lot of vinegar makes you vomit.
7. Sanggo's family had many animals.
8. This story happens during summer.
9. Sanggo is an adult.
10. Sanggo was happy when the cat died.

WRITING

How did the cat feel about what happened? Write a short story from the cat's point of view.

# UNIT SIX

## HARVESTING FRUIT

by Dakla

# PREPARATORY EXERCISES

Study this vocabulary before you read the text.

attention/pay attention	མྱེ་ཆེ་མྱི་མ་པ། 注意，注意	miserable	ཉམས་ཐག་པའི། 悲惨的
到		mole	མྱེ་བ། 痣
bent	ཐྱར་བ། 弯腰	motherless	མ་མེད་པའི། 丧母的
blind	མིག་མང་བ། 盲目	nod	མགོ་ཐྱིམ་པ། 点头
busy	བྲེལ་འཇུག་པ། 繁忙	pain	ན་ཟུག་ 疼痛
chat	ཁ་བརྒྱ། 聊天	pair	ཆ། ཟུང་། 双，对
clod	ས་རྩོག་ བོ་ཐོ། 土块	pat	རྩེ་བ་པ། 轻拍
compassion	སྙིང་རྩེ། 慈悲	picked	བདུས་པ། 捡起来
courtyard	ར་སྐོར། 庭院	precious	རྩ་ཆེན། 珍贵的
cruel	གདུག་རྩུབ་ཅན། 残暴	punishment	ཆད་པ། 惩罚
digging	ས་སྒྲིག་པ། 挖掘	rain	ཆར་བ། 雨
dirt	ཆོལ་དྲགས། 污垢	remote	མཐའ་འཁོབ་ཀྱི། 偏远的
drought	ཐན་སྐྱམ། 干旱	shabby	སྒྲིང་སྒྱུ། 泡烂的
dust	ས་རྩུལ། 灰尘	sick	ན་བ། སྐྱུང་བ། 生病的
exactly	ཉག་ཉག་ 确切的	sigh	དངན་པ་འཐེན་པ། 叹息
flood	རྒྱ་ལོག་ 洪水	smoke (v/n)	ཐ་མག་འཐེན་པ། རྩུ་བ། 抽烟，烟雾
forward	མདུན་དུ་ཕྱོགས། 朝前	snore	རྩུར་བ་འཐེན་པ། 打鼾
hesitant	ཐེ་ཆེན་ཅན་གྱི། 犹豫的	solve	ཐག་གཅོད་བྱེད་པ། 处理，解决
hesitate	ཐེ་ཆེན་སྒྲུས་པ། 犹豫	sparkle	འོད་འཆར་བ། 闪闪发光
hobby	དགའ་ཕྱོགས། 爱好	stretch	བརྒྱང་བ། 伸开，展开
hole	བུག་ 洞	sweating	རྩུལ་རྒྱ་བགས་པ། 发汗
huge	ཆེན་པོ། 巨大的	taste	ཐོ་བ། 味道，尝
information	བརྟེན་འཕྲིན། 信息	terrible	ཏ་ཅང་མི་ལགས་པའི། 糟糕的，极度的
jewel	རྩྭ་བུ། 珠宝	tiresome	ཐང་ཆད་དུ་འཇུག་པའི། 使人疲惫的
jump	ཐར་བ། 跳	trash	གད་སྒྲིགས། 废物，垃圾
liquor	མ་རག་ 酒精	weak	ཉམས་ཐག་པའི། 软软的
luckily	ལས་ལེགས་པ། 幸运的		
math	གྲངས་རིག་ 数学		

Discuss these questions.

Do you know any remote villages? Do people like to live there? Why or why not?

Can one parent raise a child alone?

What problems might occur if a child has only a father or a mother?

It was a small remote village. Only about ten families lived there. It wasn't a good place to live. There were often droughts and floods. People and livestock got sick. People didn't like to live there. Some families had moved to other villages. Very few women wanted to marry men in that village. However, Tsering's mother had married into the village.

...

Early one afternoon, Teacher Huadan was returning to his office. He had finished another day of difficult teaching. He was wearing a dark blue suit and a pair of glasses. He wore glasses because he was as blind as a mole. Without glasses on, Teacher Huadan couldn't see anything. He was kind and knowledgeable.

Teacher Huadan got to his office. He saw that the office window was open. Teacher Huadan thought something was wrong. He always closed his office window. He quickly opened the door and saw Tsering. Tsering was looking at a map of China. The map was on the wall. Tsering looked at Teacher Huadan. Tsering seemed very afraid. Huadan and Tsering looked at each other silently.

"What are you doing here?" Huadan asked.

"I want to find Shanghai on the map," Tsering replied nervously. He pointed at the map and looked at Teacher Huadan.

"How did you get into my office?" Huadan said.

"I... I..." Tsering was too afraid to talk. He pointed at the window.

"OK, OK," said Huadan angrily. "Why do you want to find Shanghai?"

"Because... because my mother is in Shanghai. I want to go to Shanghai to find my mother," Tsering replied.

Huadan saw that Tsering was very sad. Tsering was almost crying. Huadan didn't ask any more questions. Instead, he stepped forward and patted Tsering's shoulder. He felt sorry for Tsering. He wanted to help Tsering. Tsering's mother had run away several years ago. Now, Tsering lived alone with his father. Tsering's father was cruel. Tsering's father and uncle had searched for Tsering's mother for a long time. They had never found her.

Huadan asked, "How do you know your mother is in Shanghai?"

"I heard my father and uncle talking about it," replied Tsering. Then, he began crying.

...

It was late one evening. Tsering was in bed. He couldn't sleep. He rolled around in bed. Then, he heard his father and uncle arrive. They had gone to a village meeting. Tsering's father and uncle sat in front of the house. They smoked and chatted.

"Gazang, I've got some information about your wife," said Tashi, Tsering's uncle.

"What do you know about Huamo?" asked Gazang.

"Huamo is in Shanghai," Tashi said.

They silently smoked in the dark. They didn't say anything for one or two minutes. Finally, Tsering's father sighed. He quietly said, "Shanghai is too far away. I don't have enough money. I can't afford to go there. Also, Shanghai is a huge city. We don't know exactly where she is. I could never find her. Even if I had enough money, it would be useless to go." They continued smoking. They both felt hopeless.

That night, Tsering decided to find his mother. He didn't care if it was difficult. He didn't care if Shanghai was huge. He didn't care if it was expensive. Tsering couldn't live without his mother. He needed her. He decided to find her even though he knew it would be difficult.

Tsering waited till his uncle left and his father went to sleep. He ignored his father's snoring. He began making a plan to find his mother. Tsering had never heard the word Shanghai



before. He repeated that word again and again. He didn't want to forget it. He repeated the word 'Shanghai' until it was carved onto his heart.

Suddenly, a question jumped into his mind, "Where is Shanghai?" He needed to find it on a map. He couldn't ask other people. If he asked other people, they would know his plan. If other people knew his plan, they would stop him. If other people stopped him, Tsering would never get to Shanghai. If he never got to Shanghai, he would never find his mother. He made a plan to find Shanghai on a map. He knew there was a map in Teacher Huadan's office. He decided to go there the next day.

Tsering was excited and afraid when he woke up the next morning. He looked through the window. It was still dark. It was too early to go to school. Tsering stretched. Then he got up and put on his robe. He went and washed his face. All the time, he was thinking about that map. He was also thinking about his mother. He moved like a ghost. When he ate a piece of bread, he didn't taste it. When the sun rose he didn't see it. When his father called, he didn't hear him. Tsering left for school.

That day was miserable. Tsering went to class but he didn't pay attention. He just thought about Shanghai. He imagined looking at the map. He imagined finding Shanghai. He was suddenly very happy, and jumped out of his chair.

"What are you doing, Tsering?" said the math teacher. "You are making trouble in my class. Go stand outside. I will call you to come back later."

All the students looked at Tsering strangely. They couldn't understand his strange behavior. Tsering stood silently. He was confused.

"Go out!" the teacher screamed.

Tsering left the class and stood outside. Luckily, he saw Teacher Huadan leave his office. Tsering decided to take this chance. He ran to Teacher Huadan's office and opened the window.

...

That afternoon, Tsering walked home with slow, heavy steps. He was very sad because Teacher Huadan had discovered his plan. He was afraid Huadan would tell his father. He was sure his father would stop him. Then he would never go to Shanghai and never find his mother.

As he walked, Tsering realized he didn't want to go home. His home was cold without his mother. There was no happiness, no laughter, and no compassion at home. There was only cruel punishment. Tsering stopped and looked into the sky. The sky was covered in clouds. Rain was coming. The autumn sun was setting behind the west mountains. Under the sky was a huge empty field. Dirt clods were everywhere, waiting stupidly for nothing. Suddenly, a strong wind blew. Dust and trash danced in the air. Tsering squinted his eyes, and put his head down. Slowly, he put one foot forward and began the tiresome walk home.

When Tsering got home, the courtyard gate was open. Tsering looked through the gate. The house was old and shabby. There was a small garden in the center of the courtyard. Tsering went through the gate and past the garden. He walked into the house. There were many holes in the walls. Sunshine came through the holes. Light fell on the floor. The light on the floor looked like milk. Tsering was all alone. His father was somewhere else. Tsering put down his bag and looked around. He didn't know what to do.

At this time, most villagers were chatting and drinking. Tsering guessed that his father was drinking liquor with someone. Drinking liquor was his father's hobby. Tsering sat by the gate. He looked carefully at the courtyard gate. As he looked at the courtyard gate, he hoped his mother would come home. Tsering did this almost every day. He really wanted his mother to come home.

Then, he looked at the small fruit tree in the courtyard garden. The tree looked tired. Its leaves were gray. The branches hung down sadly. Tsering ran inside the house. He returned with a bucket of water. The bucket of water was very heavy. Tsering was a small weak boy. His father didn't give him enough food. He gently poured the water around the tree. As he poured the water, Tsering saw something on the tree. It was a small, green fruit. It was the tree's first fruit. Tsering promised not to eat that fruit - he would keep it for his mother. He would give her the fruit in Shanghai.

Then Tsering sat down. He looked at the gate again. Then, he remembered the past.

...

It was several years ago. Tsering was seven years old. It was the end of winter. Brown was turning to green. Life was returning to the village. Birds were singing.

Huamo stood in her courtyard. She was digging a hole. It was hard work, so she was sweating. The wind blew on her face. Tsering stood beside his mother. He looked confused.

"Ama, why are you digging a hole?"

"I want to plant a fruit tree. When the tree becomes big, we can eat the fruit. That will be nice."

"Ama, do you like fruit?"

"Yes, my little boy. I like fruit very much," replied Huamo. She gave Tsering a gentle kiss. Then Huamo said to Tsering, "Go get some water for the tree, please."

That was several years ago. But since that day, Tsering had watered the tree every day.

...

Suddenly, Tsering felt a huge pain. He didn't know what had happened. He fell on the ground and rolled around.

"What are you doing, you lazy boy!?" Tsering heard a loud voice. Tsering turned and saw his father. His father was short and fat. He looked very angry. He was drunk.

"Oh, Father," Tsering said miserably.

"I know what you are doing. You are thinking about your mother," yelled Gazang. "Why don't you ever think about me?" Then Gazang grabbed Tsering and shook Tsering's little body. Gazang beat Tsering, again and again. Tsering was in terrible pain. He thought he might die.

Suddenly, Tsering heard a voice. The voice said, "Stop that! Leave him alone! He's just a little kid!" Gazang stopped beating Tsering. Tsering sat on the ground.

Tsering looked up and saw Teacher Huadan. Teacher Huadan was standing in the courtyard gate. There was a tall man next to Teacher Huadan. Teacher Huadan ran to Tsering. He picked up Tsering. The tall man ran to Gazang. He grabbed Gazang's arms and held him. Now Gazang couldn't beat anybody.

Tsering was crying. He said, "Father beat me!"

Teacher Huadan put Tsering on the ground. He said to the tall man, "Let go of Gazang. Take Tsering to your home. Give him some food and drink. I will talk to Gazang." The tall man did what Teacher Huadan asked. All the village people respected Teacher Huadan. Teacher Huadan often helped the villagers solve problems. The tall man took Tsering. Gazang and Huadan sat down. They started to smoke together.

"Tsering is a very good boy. Why did you beat him?" said Huadan.

"Because he always thinks about his mother. He never thinks about me," replied Gazang.

"Do you know why he doesn't think about you?" Huadan said.

Gazang said nothing and continued smoking.

"Beating Tsering will not solve your problems? Sometimes you are cruel – like a wild

yak," said Huadan angrily.

Gazang bent his head down. He said nothing.

"Tsering is the quietest student in my class. He does everything I tell him to. He studies very hard. Do you know what the other students call him?" Huadan said.

"No, I don't know..." Gazang said.

"They call him 'motherless boy'," Huadan said.

"I didn't know that," Gazang said and sighed.

"Of course you don't know that. You don't know anything about Tsering. You don't know about his study, his thoughts, or his feelings. Do you know why you don't know anything about Tsering?" Huadan asked. Then he continued, "Because you never talk with him. You don't try to understand his feelings. Tsering is just twelve years old! Twelve-year-old children miss their mother very much! Wouldn't you be the same?" Huadan said.

"Maybe..." said Gazang hesitantly.

"Not maybe. I'm sure that you would miss your mother! Everyone would miss their mother," Huadan said.

Gazang nodded his head a few times. They continued smoking. They didn't say anything.

Huadan looked outside. It was already dark. He noticed some sunlight shining on the ground. Huadan could smell liquor on Gazang. He said, "You drink too much. You get drunk and beat your son. You used to beat your wife and that's why she left. You should take care of your wife and child. You shouldn't beat them."

The night was beautiful. The bright moon was big and round. Silver stars sparkled in the sky. A soft wind gently blew.

"Go find Huamo in Shanghai," said Huadan.

"But I..." Gazang hesitated.

"Don't worry about the money. I'll pay half the cost," Huadan said.

"I can't take your money," Gazang said.

"I'm not giving the money to you. I'm giving it to Tsering," Huadan replied. "Take Tsering with you when go to Shanghai."

Gazang didn't know what to say. He held Huadan's hands tightly. Tears were in his eyes.

...

During the next few days, Tsering was busy. He was getting ready to leave. Tsering was very excited. He was always smiling. Tsering put everything he needed into a big bag. The bag was very full. However, Tsering included one more thing. It was very special. It was the small fruit from the tree in the courtyard garden. It was just a fruit. But for Tsering, it was a precious jewel.

# VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Match the word with its opposite.

- |             |                     |
|-------------|---------------------|
| 1. bent     | _____ approximately |
| 2. cruel    | _____ tiny          |
| 3. huge     | _____ straight      |
| 4. pain     | _____ strong        |
| 5. remote   | _____ relaxed       |
| 6. sick     | _____ well          |
| 7. terrible | _____ pleasure      |
| 8. weak     | _____ central       |
| 9. busy     | _____ wonderful     |
| 10. exactly | _____ kind          |

Spell the words correctly.

- |             |       |          |       |
|-------------|-------|----------|-------|
| atitonnet   | _____ | triemose | _____ |
| cossiaopnm  | _____ | sbabhy   | _____ |
| cuoayrtdr   | _____ | fdorawr  | _____ |
| inrtiaonmof | _____ | drhguto  | _____ |
| ptnemhsinu  | _____ | hloe     | _____ |

Fill in the gaps.

- clod drought flood jewel luckily mole sigh trash taste solve
- There hadn't been rain for months, and suddenly, after a storm, there was a \_\_\_\_\_.
  - There are many \_\_\_\_\_s in the fields before plowing.
  - My brother is as blind as a \_\_\_\_\_ so he needs to wear glasses.
  - I lost my wallet but \_\_\_\_\_ I found it.
  - These noodles \_\_\_\_\_ strange, so I won't eat them.
  - During the \_\_\_\_\_ all the crops dried up and died.
  - The thief snuck into the house and stole many precious \_\_\_\_\_s.
  - He gave a tired \_\_\_\_\_ and continued his work.
  - Please don't throw your \_\_\_\_\_ on the street.
  - I've never met a problem that I couldn't \_\_\_\_\_.

Group these words together.

busy chat cruel dirt drought flood hesitant hesitate  
miserable mole nod pat rain weak snore

Nature: \_\_\_\_\_

Adjectives to describe people: \_\_\_\_\_

Verbs: \_\_\_\_\_

GRAMMAR EXERCISES
-------------------

Correct the mistakes.

He was very sad though Teacher Huadan had discovered his plan.

He wore glasses but he was as blind as a mole.

People but livestock got sick.

There were often droughts because floods.

They didn't say anything for one and two minutes.

They smoked because chatted.

Tsering waited till his uncle left but his father went to sleep.

Tsering went to class or he didn't pay attention.

You don't know about his study, his thoughts, because his feelings.

Fill the gaps with pronouns.

Huamo stood in \_\_\_\_\_ courtyard. \_\_\_\_\_ was digging a hole. It was hard work, so \_\_\_\_\_ was sweating. The wind blew on \_\_\_\_\_ face. Tsering stood beside \_\_\_\_\_ mother. \_\_\_\_\_ looked confused.

"Ama, why are \_\_\_\_\_ digging a hole?"

"\_\_\_\_\_ want to plant a fruit tree. When the tree becomes big, \_\_\_\_\_ can eat the fruit. That will be nice."

"Ama, do \_\_\_\_\_ like fruit?"

"Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ little boy. \_\_\_\_\_ like fruit very much," replied Huamo. \_\_\_\_\_ gave Tsering a gentle kiss.

Fill the gaps with do, don't, did, didn't.

Ama, \_\_\_\_\_ you like fruit?

Huadan \_\_\_\_\_ ask any more questions.

\_\_\_\_\_ you know what the other students call him?

He \_\_\_\_\_ know what had happened.

Why \_\_\_\_\_ you beat him?

He \_\_\_\_\_ want to forget it.

How \_\_\_\_\_ you get into my office?"

We \_\_\_\_\_ know exactly where she is.

How \_\_\_\_\_ you know your mother is in Shanghai?"

I \_\_\_\_\_ have enough money.

\_\_\_\_\_ you know why he doesn't think about you?

The tall man \_\_\_\_\_ what Teacher Huadan asked.

People \_\_\_\_\_ like to live there.

When the sun rose he \_\_\_\_\_ see it.

Choose the correct verb form.

Teacher Huadan (put/putted) Tsering on the ground. He (say/said) to the tall man, "Let go of Gazang. (Take/Took) Tsering to your home. (Gave/Give) him some food and drink. I will (talk/talking) to Gazang." The tall man (do/did) what Teacher Huadan (ask/asked). All the village people (respected/respect) Teacher Huadan. Teacher Huadan often (help/helped) the villagers (solved/solve) problems. The tall man (take/took) Tsering. Gazang and Huadan (sit/sat) down. They (starting/started) to (smoke/smoking) together.

Fill the gaps with prepositions.

\_\_\_\_\_ he walked, Tsering realized he didn't want to go home. His home was cold \_\_\_\_\_ his mother. There was no happiness, no laughter, and no compassion \_\_\_\_\_ home. There was only cruel punishment. Tsering stopped and looked \_\_\_\_\_ the sky. The sky was covered \_\_\_\_\_ clouds. Rain was coming. The autumn sun was setting \_\_\_\_\_ the west mountains. \_\_\_\_\_ the sky was a huge empty field. Dirt clods were everywhere, waiting stupidly for nothing. Suddenly, a strong wind blew. Dust and trash danced \_\_\_\_\_ the air. Tsering squinted his eyes, and put his head \_\_\_\_\_. Slowly, he put one foot \_\_\_\_\_ and began the tiresome walk home.

Write capital letters, commas, and full stops.

during the next few days tsering was busy he was getting ready to leave tsering was very excited he was always smiling tsering put everything the needed into a big bag the bag was very full however tsering included one more thing it was very special it was the small fruit from the tree in the courtyard garden it was just a fruit but for tsering it was a precious jewel

Write 'and' in the sentences.

At this time, most villagers were chatting drinking

Gazang Huadan sat down.

He grabbed Gazang's arms held him.

There was no happiness, no laughter, no compassion at home.

There were often droughts floods.

Tsering looked up saw Teacher Huadan.

Tsering put down his bag looked around.

Tsering stopped looked into the sky.

Tsering waited till his uncle left his father went to sleep.

QUESTIONS ABOUT THE TEXT
--------------------------

Comprehension Questions

1. Was the village very close to a city?
2. Why wasn't the village a good place to live?
3. Had Tsering's mother always lived in the village?
4. Why did Teacher Huadan wear glasses?
5. Why did Tsering want to find Shanghai on the map?
6. Whose uncle had information about the missing mother / wife?
7. If Tsering's father had enough money to go to Shanghai, would it be useful to go?
8. What became "carved" into Tsering's heart?
9. What suddenly "jumped" into Tsering's mind?
10. Why did Tsering move "like a ghost"?
11. What was miserable?
12. Did Tsering not pay money, or did he not pay attention?
13. Why did Tsering jump out of his chair?
14. What class was Tsering taking when he jumped out of his chair?
15. When Tsering saw Teacher Huadan leave his office, what did Tsering decide to take?
16. What three feelings and emotions were missing from Tsering's home?
17. What was dancing in the air?
18. What feeling is used to describe Tsering's walk home?
19. Did Tsering's father only drink liquor occasionally?
20. What was Huamo doing in the courtyard?

Discussion Questions

1. How would you try to find a missing person in a big city?
2. Was Tsering's father being selfish by expecting Tsering to forget about his mother and think about his father?
3. What effect did the family problems have on Tsering's education?
4. Do you think that Teacher Huadan was right to visit Tsering's home and talk to Tsering's father about their family problems?
5. What should Gazang do to improve his relationship with his son?

True or False?

1. The village was remote.
2. Teacher Huadan was blind.
3. Tsering's father was very kind.
4. Tsering's mother was somewhere in Beijing.
5. Shanghai is a small city.
6. Tsering repeated the word "Shanghai" until it was "carved into his heart".
7. The answer to Tsering's problems jumped into his mind.
8. Tsering moved like an old man.
9. All the students looked strangely at Tsering when he jumped out of his chair.
10. Tsering broke Teacher Huadan's office window.
11. Tsering thought he might live forever.

WRITING
---------

What happened when Tsering and Gazang went to Shanghai? Did they find Tsering's mother? Write a short story.



# UNIT SEVEN

## A TURN IN HIS LIFE

by Tinle Gonbo

# PREPARATORY EXERCISES

Study this vocabulary before you read the text.

ache གཟེར་བྲག་ལང་བ། 疼痛	hometown ང་ཡུལ། 家乡
advice སླབ་སྟན། 建议	horrible བྱ་བཅོག་པོ། 可怕的
atop རྩེ་དུ། 在顶上	humiliation དམའ་འཁེབས། 羞辱
bang དེག་སྒྲ། 重击	insect འབྲུ་མིན། 昆虫
bedtime ཉལ་དུས། 就寝时间	insult དམའ་འཁེབས་བྱེད་པ། 侮辱
boil སྐལ་བ། 煮	kick རྒྱག་རྒྱག། 踢
bookshelf དཔེ་སྟེན། 书架	kitchen ཐབ་ཆང་། 厨房
brave དཔའ་པོ། 勇敢的	lamb ལྷ་གུའི་ཤ། 羔羊
breeze བཟེར་བ། 微风	lonely ཁེར་གྱིང་། 孤独的
bullet མདེལ། 子弹	loud སྐད་ཚད། 大声的
cafeteria ཟ་ཁང། 食堂	lounge དལ་གསོ་ཁང། 休息室
ceiling གནམ་བཙད། 天花板	madman རྩོན་པ། 疯子
chatter འཆལ་གཏམ། 唠叨	method ཐབས་ལམ། 方法
cheat མགོ་སྐོར་གཏོང་བ། 欺骗	misery རྒྱག་བཟུལ། 痛苦
chew རྩད་པ། 嚼碎	mutton ལྷག་ཤ། 羊肉
cigarette ཐ་མག། 香烟	nest བྱ་ཆང་། 巢
clench དམ་པོར་འཛིན་པ། 紧握	nice ལགས་པོ། 美好的
clock རྒྱུ་ཚད་འཁོར་ལོ། 时钟	noisy བཅོསྒྲག་པོ། 喧闹的
computer རྩིས་འཁོར། 计算机	normal རྒྱུར་བཏང་གི། 正常的
concentrate རྫོང་ཆེ་གཅིག་སྒྲིམས། 集中	percent བརྒྱ་ཆ། 百分比
console བེམས་གསོ་གཏོང་བ། 安慰	pick སྐྱབ། 挑选
constantly མི་མཐུད་དུ། 不断地	principal སློབ་གནོ། 校长
couch རྟེན་སྒྲིག་རྒྱབ་ཀྱུ། 睡椅	push འབྲུད་རྒྱག་གཏོང་བ། 推
countryside རྫོང་གོང་། 乡下	quiet ལྷ་མིམ་པོ། 寂静的
coward རྩར་མ། 懦夫	rarely སྐབས་སྐབས་སྟུ། 很少地
crooked རྒྱག་འཁྱུག། 弯曲的	relieve བེལ་བ། 解除
crops ལ་རྟག། 农作物	repeat བསྒྱུར་སྒྲོས་བྱེད་པ། 重复
descend ཐུར་དུ་འབབ་པ། 下降	rescue རྒྱབ་པ། 营救
during སྐབས་སྟུ། 在...时候	rise འཆར་བ། 升起
eager འདོད་པ་ཆེན་པོ། 渴望的	row བསྐྱར་བ། 行，排
enrage ཁོང་སྒྲོ་སྒྲོང་བ། 激怒	sack རས་ཁྱུག། 布袋
equipment ཡོ་ཆས། 设备	satisfied ཡིད་ཆེམས་པོ། 满意的
fireball མེ་ལྷུ་མ། 火球，文中特指太阳	score ཐོབ་གྲངས། 得分
flat རོང་མཉམ་པོ། 平坦的	slope ལ་བྲུ། 斜坡
homesickness ལུལ་གདུང་། 乡愁	slowly དལ་བྱུ། 缓慢地

soak རྒྱུ་བཅུག་པ། 湿透  
 sorry དགོངས་དག་ཞུ་བ། 对不起；抱歉  
 squawk ཅ་ཅོར་སྒྲོག་པ། 发出叫声  
 steep བཀའ་གཟར། 陡坡  
 sticking རྫོ་བྱར་དུ། 突然地；突出的  
 supper དགོང་པ། 晚餐  
 team ཐུ་ལག། 团队  
 tease ཀྱ་རེ་བྱེད་པ། 捉弄  
 thresh ཚར་མ་རྩུང་བ། 打谷  
 tongue ལྷེ། 舌头  
 towel ལག་འཕྲིལ། 毛巾  
 tractor རྫོང་འཁོར། 拖拉机

unbelievable ཡིད་ཆེས་མི་བྱུང་བའི། 难以置信的  
 uncomfortable ལམས་མི་བདེ་བའི། 不舒服的  
 vacation ལུང་གསེང་། 假期  
 warm རྩོ་མའི། 暖和的  
 wash བགྲུ་བ། 清洗  
 weather གནམ་གཤིས། 天气  
 winnow རྒྱང་ལ་འཕྱར་བ། 扬谷  
 woke གཉིད་ལས་སང་བ། 醒  
 wolf ཐུང་གི། 狼  
 worry སེམས་སྒྲུག་བྱེད་པའི། 担心的  
 zombie རོ་ལང་། གདོན་འདྲེ། 僵尸

Study these expressions.

On top of the world. འཛམ་གླིང་ཡང་ལྷེ། (very happy or excited)

To leave the world. འཇིག་རྟེན་མི་ཡུལ་དང་བྲལ་བ། (to die)

Discuss these questions.

Exams are important for success. Do you they should be important? Give reasons.

Can unhappy people be successful? Are happiness and success connected?

Are students always kind to each other? Why or why not?

## WRITING

Can you remember your first day at a new school? What was it like? What happened?

"My dear. As always, your mother sends her best wishes. Good luck for your exam! Remember – this exam is the most important. This exam will decide if you can enter a good middle school or not. Try hard!" said Lhamo to her son. She was famous in Nipa Township for her beauty and kindness. She was warm-hearted and looked like a goddess. She kissed her twelve-year-old son.

"I'll try my best. You should try your best to remember our deal. If I get a good exam score, you have to buy me a bicycle." Dondrup said. He made a face, showing his white teeth. Then he ran into the classroom like a bullet. Lhamo turned to go home.

A huge fireball hung in the sky, calling villagers to work. Around the school, the fields had become golden. A morning's breeze made the grain wave. The weather god painted the sky blue.

Dondrup stepped into the classroom. The classroom was as noisy as a nest of squawking baby birds. Some students were wishing that they had studied harder. Others talked about their future middle school. No one noticed Dondrup arrive, except his best friend Gonbo. Gonbo sat at the desk behind Dondrub. Deep in Dondrup's heart, he was hoping that both he and his best friend could enter the county middle school. Everyone believed that the county middle school was much better than the poor countryside middle schools. Dondrub turned around to say good luck to his friend, but the school bell rang. The school bell was very loud, and Gonbo couldn't hear Dondrup's voice. All the students sat down and waited for the teacher. Only breathing could be heard, nothing else.

A big fat man stepped seriously into the classroom. He was holding a big roll of exam papers. While handing out the papers, he walked around yelling, "Do the test yourself! No cheating! If you don't follow the rules, you won't finish the exam!" Students were shocked by his loud, horrible voice. They all stared at him. Then he sat in a big chair in front of the classroom, eager to catch someone cheating.

Now the classroom was as quiet as a winter midnight, except for the sound of students writing. After Dondrup got the paper, he looked through to the end. He nodded his head as he looked at each page. Then he started. He finished the exam quickly. Then he secretly looked at the other students. Some were scratching their heads. Others were sticking out their tongues. Some were staring at the ceiling. None of the other students were finished. They all looked unhappy. Dondrup handed his exam paper to the teacher and asked, "Can I leave?"

The teacher was astonished, "Everyone else is only half finished. You are so fast! Let me take a look." He quickly looked through to the end and said, "Well done! You can go!" Dondrup gave a satisfied smile and said, "Thank you Sir!" He ran out of the classroom. His heart suddenly felt light and free.

...

A month passed. Dondrup had just returned home. He had been hunting birds with other village boys in the hot summer sun. Sweat rolled down his cheeks and fell on the rug. Dondrup's father was a businessman and often travelled to Yunna. He had brought the beautiful rug from Yunna when Dondrup was a small boy. "Dondrup, come here. Your father has good news," his mother yelled from the living room.

"Just a minute!" Dondrup replied. He wiped his face with a towel. He was sure that it was news about the exam. He and his family had been waiting for it like cats wait for mice.

His father was sitting on the couch holding a piece of paper. He looked very satisfied. Lhamo hugged Dondrup tightly. She kissed him, and then let him sit by his father. "Good boy! You passed the exam! You can enter the county town middle school on September first," said his father with delight.

Dondrup was happy to hear it. What he really wanted to hear, however, was news about his bicycle. His parents had promised to buy him a bicycle if he passed the exam. But now, his father wasn't saying anything about it. Dondrup suddenly worried that they had forgotten about it. Slowly, misery appeared on his face.

However, his parents were only teasing him. "Oh, I can see something in your face. You're not sad are you?" Dondrup's father asked. Then he laughed loudly. "I already called my friend yesterday. He will bring the bike tomorrow. Don't worry about anything!" Dondrup changed his unhappy face immediately. He hugged his father tightly and kissed his mother. Now he was on top of the world.

The night was very long. When Dondrup didn't sleep, he thought about the bike. And when he slept, he dreamed about the bike. He thought about riding his new bike to his new school.

The sun was shining brightly and it was almost noon when Lhamo woke Dondrup. She yelled, "Get up! It's time to have lunch!" Dondrup got out of bed immediately and asked, "Did my bike arrive yet?"

Lhamo replied, "Not yet. Wash your face and come to the kitchen."

Dondrup's father Huadan had left for business in the county town. Early that morning, Lhamo was busy in the fields. Dondrup sat on the flat roof of their big house. He looked like a giant bird. He looked into the distance, waiting for his father to return. As the sun was setting behind the mountain, Dondrup saw a truck on the road. The truck stopped on the road and a man got out. It was Huadan. Huadan climbed onto the back of the truck. He lifted a bright, shiny new bicycle off the truck. Huadan then pushed the bike towards their home.

After three or four days of teaching his son to ride the bicycle, Huadan went away on business. Dondrup was able to ride everywhere by himself. Children in his village said, "I hope I can get a bike like yours. It's really nice." They all admired him. Some asked to ride Dondrup's bicycle. Of course he refused. He even felt uncomfortable if anyone touched his bicycle. Every day he rode his bicycle around the village. He even visited his relatives in nearby villages. He loved his bike very much and took good care of it. In this way, he joyfully finished the summer vacation.

...

Lhamo was in the kitchen, making breakfast. She called to her son, "The sun has risen. You are going one step higher in your education. Good morning, my dear!" Dondrup got out of bed and came to the kitchen. He sat at the table, which was full of his favorite foods. He silently stared at the food till his parents joined him. During breakfast, his parents gave him much advice about school life.

Dondrup finally said, "Mom, I'm afraid that none of my friends will be there. There will only be strangers there." Lhamo replied, "You are such a nice, good boy. I'm sure everyone will welcome you. Everybody will want to be your friend. Remember! The most important thing is to trust yourself. Try your best!"

Lhamo kissed Dondrup. Tears flowed from his eyes. Lhamo consoled him. "Don't worry! Your father and I will visit you whenever we are free." Dondrup nodded. He wiped the tears from his eyes. Lhamo walked with Dondrup and Huadan to the courtyard gate.

...

"I am Dorjee. I'm in charge of your new class. Please tell me your name, age, and hometown," said a man in a new black suit. Big round glasses sat on his crooked nose. He looked Chinese, but he spoke Tibetan.

"My name is Dondrup." Dondrup introduced himself. Meanwhile the teacher took notes. Next, Huadan and Dorjee had a long talk about Dondrup. Huadan asked the teacher to help Dondrup in his new school life. When they had finished talking, Teacher Dorjee led them to school.

They visited many rooms in a huge building. Teacher Dorjee introduced the school in detail. Dondrup saw many pieces of scientific equipment. He saw many computers in rows. All these things were new to him. Many different-sized books were on the bookshelves in the library. Both Dondrup and his father were astonished. They learned many things about the school that day. Dondrup's father thanked Teacher Dorjee. The sun was setting when Huadan said to his son, "Dondrup, I am delighted that you can enter such a great school. I know that you made this possible. Good luck with your studies. Work hard like you did before. Everything will be fine." Dondrup was sad that his father was going. He stood silently as his father left.

...

The next day, Dondrup was ready to have his first class. He was excited to see his new classmates and sit in his new classroom. He saw many eyes staring at him as he walked to his seat. Dondrup realized most of his classmates were Tibetans from the county town. They usually spoke Chinese, because they spent so much time with Chinese children. Unfortunately, Dondrup only spoke Tibetan well. His Chinese was very limited. A few students laughed and chattered loudly while looking at Dondrup. He couldn't understand them. He thought that maybe they were teasing him. Dondrup suddenly felt nervous. He didn't feel excited any more. He quickly went to his seat.

Class started when a Chinese man stepped inside the classroom holding a Chinese book. Although Dondrup concentrated, he could only understand about ten percent. Unbelievably, the teacher asked Dondrup the first question. Of course, he didn't know the answer. In fact, he didn't even understand the question! The teacher repeated the question several times. Dondrup listened carefully but still didn't understand. He said, "I am a good student." He said this accidentally, because he was so nervous. All the students laughed at him.

The Chinese teacher gestured to Dondrup to sit down. Dondrup felt terrible. His heart beat quickly. He couldn't breathe very well. Dondrup put his head down and covered his red face with his hands. It was the biggest humiliation he had ever had.

After school, he couldn't go home because his village was far away. At around six o'clock, Dondrup ate supper by himself, in a corner of the huge school cafeteria. Eating alone in the big room, Dondrup felt like a tiny insect. He slowly chewed his food and sadly drank his tea. Tears welled up in his eyes.

Before bedtime, Dondrup went for a walk. It helped relieve his homesickness. Then he returned to the dorm to go to sleep. However, something terrible happened.

As Dondrup pushed the door open and stepped inside, a big basin of cold water fell on him. The metal basin hit his head with a bang. He was soaking wet and freezing cold. He angrily kicked the empty basin. He yelled, "You cowards! Who did this!? Show me your face so I can beat it. Come on! Let's step outside!"

Nima, a naughty little boy, had placed the basin above the door. He was not brave enough to say anything. All the other students kept his secret. Dondrup yelled like a madman, but the others didn't listen. Exhausted, Dondrup threw the basin out the window. Then he climbed into bed, even though he was wet.

Dondrup couldn't sleep. He rolled from side to side many times, clenching his teeth tightly. He had terrible nightmares. In his nightmares, many students teased and beat him.

Five days passed slowly. It seemed more like five hundred years. Dondrup was a lonely lamb surrounded by wolves. He was constantly insulted, beaten, and laughed at. He couldn't understand anything in class. Saturday came at last. Dondrup left the school quickly and ran home.

When he arrived home, Lhamo greeted him with hugs and kisses. Then she led him to the lounge room. Many special dishes were set on the table. Several bottles of Pepsi were there too. Huadan smiled at his son, but Dondrup had no expression on his face. His parents immediately knew that Dondrup was unhappy. However, Huadan and Lhamo didn't want to ask Dondrup about it. They wanted him to be happy. Lhamo asked, "Dondrup, are you hungry? Would you like to try some mutton?" She put a big piece of fatty mutton in Dondrup's bowl. Dondrup picked it up. He didn't say anything. He ate like a zombie. When he finished, he said, "I'm full. Now I want to sleep."

His father asked, "Are you sick? You look terrible. What's wrong with you?"

Suddenly, tears ran down Dondrup's face. He hugged Lhamo tightly. He told his parents about his problems. His parents felt sorry for him. They didn't reply when Dondrup asked not to return to school.

The next morning, the sun shone on Dondrup's bike. Lhamo spoke gently to her son. Huadan held Dondrup's hand. But Dondrup cried and refused to go to school. Unexpectedly, Huadan was enraged. He slapped and kicked his son while scolding him. Lhamo could not bear this. She rescued Dondrup from Huadan. Dondrup ran to his bedroom. Lhamo went to the kitchen. Huadan lit a cigarette and stood outside.

Fifteen minutes passed and then all three were sitting in the living room. Huadan was smoking, which he rarely did. They were silent. Dondrup was rubbing his red eyes. His whole body was very painful.

"OK, I realize that you suffered in that school. I know you hate it there. This is not your fault. Maybe it is just too difficult for you. So, I'll talk to the school principal to see if you can join the school a year later," Huadan said to his son. Dondrup thanked his father. He promised he would go to school next year.

...

After returning from school, Dondrup woke up early every morning. He helped his mother with the livestock. He helped her do chores. All the villagers admired his hard work and kindness. Lhamo enjoyed working with him. Dondrup's jokes made his mother's belly ache from laughter. As time passed they became closer.

Busy threshing days came. The whole village divided into two teams. Each day, two teams worked for two families to thresh crops. The boiling sun was shining brightly over the villagers in Lhamo's field. They scolded the sun for being so hot. Women winnowed the grain after threshing. Men were busy around the thresher. The tractors made loud noises as they moved slowly between the fields. Children were chasing the tractors. Some children sat atop the grain sacks on the tractors. Dondrup sat on the tractor only once to fetch water for the villagers. He climbed up high on the sacks and lay there while the tractor moved. He enjoyed the warm sunshine that covered him like a blanket. While the tractor was descending a steep slope, somehow, the driver lost control. Machine and man together fell and rolled down to the banks of the Nipo River. Covered in dust and blood, Dondrup left this world.

Lhamo fainted as soon as the news came to her.

# VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Spell the words correctly.

ahce \_\_\_\_\_

petnecr \_\_\_\_\_

bereze \_\_\_\_\_

sadteifsi \_\_\_\_\_

citaterge \_\_\_\_\_

uatbrlofmone \_\_\_\_\_

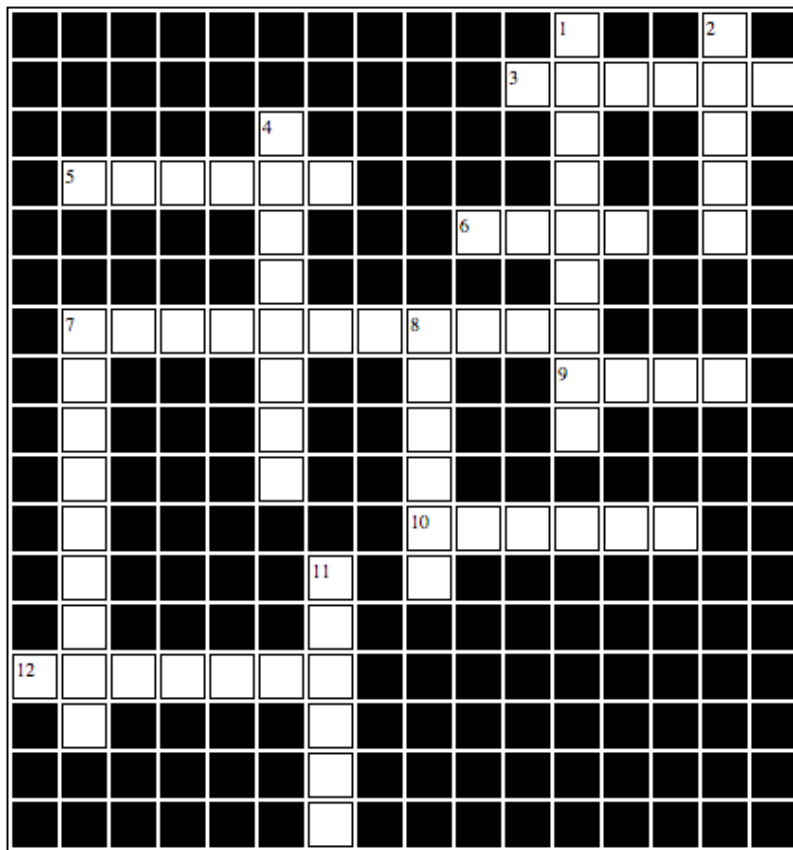
eqpnemitu \_\_\_\_\_

zibemo \_\_\_\_\_

hulitianoim \_\_\_\_\_

ruecse \_\_\_\_\_

Do the crossword.



## Across

3. Usual.
5. Meat from sheep.
6. Go up.
7. Where farmers live.
9. Baby sheep.
10. Separate the seeds from other things.
12. The place where you cook food.

## Down

1. Place where you put books.
2. Really want to do something.
4. Where you were born.
7. Students eat food there.
8. Birds make this noise.
11. It is in your mouth.



Fill in the gaps.

lonely nice noisy quiet satisfied steep unbelievable uncomfortable warm crooked loud

1. I feel \_\_\_\_\_ without my friends.
2. He looks \_\_\_\_\_.
3. She is \_\_\_\_\_ with our work.
4. The weather is \_\_\_\_\_ today.
5. That mountain is too \_\_\_\_\_ to climb.
6. The sound of the bomb was extremely \_\_\_\_\_.
7. His story was really \_\_\_\_\_.
8. The school is really \_\_\_\_\_ during lunchtime.
9. The people in your hometown were really \_\_\_\_\_ to me when I visited.
10. His teeth are very \_\_\_\_\_ because he ate too much sugar when he was young.

Match the word to its synonym.

- |               |                  |
|---------------|------------------|
| 1. brave      | _____ sun        |
| 2. constantly | _____ save       |
| 3. descend    | _____ courageous |
| 4. equipment  | _____ silent     |
| 5. fireball   | _____ holiday    |
| 6. quiet      | _____ fret       |
| 7. rescue     | _____ always     |
| 8. supper     | _____ go down    |
| 9. vacation   | _____ stuff      |
| 10. worry     | _____ dinner     |

Change the word form.

- advice → verb: \_\_\_\_\_
- brave → noun: \_\_\_\_\_
- console → noun: \_\_\_\_\_
- enrage → adjective: \_\_\_\_\_
- humiliation → verb: \_\_\_\_\_
- method → adjective: \_\_\_\_\_
- rarely → adjective: \_\_\_\_\_
- slowly → adjective: \_\_\_\_\_

Put the words in groups.

ache, bedtime, bookshelf, breeze, cheat, console, constantly, enrage, descend, crooked, slowly, rise, noisy, pick, rarely, madman, lonely, insect, kick, misery, zombie, weather, uncomfortable, unbelievable, tease, thresh, squawk

- verbs: \_\_\_\_\_
- nouns: \_\_\_\_\_
- adjectives: \_\_\_\_\_
- adverbs: \_\_\_\_\_

GRAMMAR EXERCISES
-------------------

Write capital letters, commas, and full stops.

dondrup's father huadan had left for business in the county town early that morning Lhamo was busy in the fields dondrup sat on the flat roof of their big house he looked like a giant bird he looked into the distance waiting for his father to return as the sun was setting behind the mountain dondrup saw a truck on the road the truck stopped on the road and a man got out it was huadan huadan climbed onto the back of the truck he lifted a bright shiny new bicycle off the truck huadan then pushed the bike towards their home

Connect the sentence parts.

Busy threshing days	the grain after threshing.
The whole village	for being so hot.
Each day, two teams	around the thresher.
They scolded the sun	worked for two families to thresh crops.
Women winnowed	came.
Men were busy	divided into two teams.

Write the correct verb forms.

Lhamo (are/was) in the kitchen, (making/made) breakfast. She (called/call) to her son, "The sun has (rise/risen). You (am/are) (go/going) one step higher in your education. Good morning, my dear!" Dondrup (got/get) out of bed and (coming/came/come) to the kitchen. He (sit/sat) at the table, which (is/was) full of his favorite foods. He silently (stared/staring/stare) at the food till his parents joined him. During breakfast, his parents (given/gave/give) him much advice about school life.

Fill in the gaps with conjunctions.

After school, he couldn't go home \_\_\_\_\_ his village was far away.  
All the students sat down \_\_\_\_\_ waited for the teacher.  
Covered in dust \_\_\_\_\_ blood, Dondrup left this world.  
He said this accidentally, \_\_\_\_\_ he was so nervous.  
She kissed him, \_\_\_\_\_ then let him sit by his father.  
She was warm-hearted \_\_\_\_\_ looked like a goddess.  
Show me your face \_\_\_\_\_ I can beat it.  
Then he climbed into bed, \_\_\_\_\_ he was wet.  
This exam will decide if you can enter a good middle school \_\_\_\_\_ not.

Fill the gaps with: to in of on as with about that

They visited many rooms \_\_\_\_\_ a huge building. Teacher Dorjee introduced the school \_\_\_\_\_ detail. Dondrup saw many pieces \_\_\_\_\_ scientific equipment. He saw many computers \_\_\_\_\_ rows. All these things were new \_\_\_\_\_ him. Many different-sized books were \_\_\_\_\_ the bookshelves in the library. Both Dondrup and his father were astonished. They learned many things \_\_\_\_\_ the school that day. Dondrup's father thanked Teacher Dorjee. The sun was setting when Huadan said \_\_\_\_\_ his son, "Dondrup, I am delighted \_\_\_\_\_ you can enter such a great school. I know that you made this possible. Good luck \_\_\_\_\_ your studies. Work hard like you did before. Everything will be fine." Dondrup was sad \_\_\_\_\_ his father was going. He stood silently \_\_\_\_\_ his father left.

Fill the gaps with: do, did, done, don't, didn't.

\_\_\_\_\_ the test yourself!

\_\_\_\_\_ worry about anything.

\_\_\_\_\_ worry!

Dondrup listened carefully but still \_\_\_\_\_ understand.

Dondrup yelled like a madman, but the others \_\_\_\_\_ listen.

He \_\_\_\_\_ feel excited any more.

He \_\_\_\_\_ say anything.

He helped her \_\_\_\_\_ chores.

However, Huadan and Lhamo \_\_\_\_\_ want to ask Dondrup about it.

Huadan was smoking, which he rarely \_\_\_\_\_.

Of course, he \_\_\_\_\_ know the answer. In fact, he didn't even understand the question!

They \_\_\_\_\_ reply when Dondrup asked not to return to school.

Well \_\_\_\_\_!

When Dondrup \_\_\_\_\_ sleep, he thought about the bike.

Who \_\_\_\_\_ this!?

Work hard like you \_\_\_\_\_ before.

QUESTIONS ABOUT THE TEXT
--------------------------

Comprehension Questions

1. Who is Lhamo's son?
2. Who is Dondrup's friend at the start of the story?
3. Why was the classroom as quiet as a winter's night?
4. What was Dondrup's father's job?
5. Why did Dondrup's father buy him a bicycle?
6. How did Lhamo feel when Dondrup left for his new school?
7. How did Dondrup feel about going to his new school?
8. When Dondrup arrived at the new school, he met a man called Dorjee. Who was Dorjee?
9. What language problem did Dondrup meet in his new school?
10. What other problems did Dondrup meet in his new school?
11. Why did Dondrup feel homesick?
12. Why was Dondrup like a lonely lamb surrounded by wolves?
13. What did Dondrup's parents say when he told them about his problems?
14. What did Huadan do when he was enraged?
15. Did Lhamo enjoy working with her son?
16. Was Dondrup happier at home or in his new school?
17. Why did Dondrup get on the tractor?
18. How did Dondrup die?
19. What did Lhamo do when she heard the news?

Discussion Questions

1. Did Dondrup make the right decision to return home from school?
2. What should Dondrup's teacher's have done?
3. If you were Dondrup's parents, what would you have done?
4. What caused Dondrup's death?
5. Is this story realistic? Have you ever heard a story like this before?

True or False?

1. Dondrup liked his new school.
2. Huadan wanted Dondrup to stay in his new school.
3. Lhamo supported Dondrup.
4. Dondrup's Chinese was poor.
5. Dondrup was unhappy with his new bicycle.
6. Dondrup's classmates in his new school were cruel.
7. The villagers were very busy with harvesting and threshing.
8. Huadan's father was a businessman.
9. Dondrup was a clever young boy.
10. Dondrup's teachers in his new school did not help him.

WRITING

Did you ever face difficulties at school? Write about it.

# UNIT EIGHT

## IS IT KARMA?

by Padma Gyamtso

# PREPARATORY EXERCISES

Study this vocabulary before you read the text.

admire ཡིད་སྤྲོད་འཕྲོར་བ། 羡慕	granddaughter ཚ་སྒྱ། 孙女
adobe ས་ཕག་གི་ཡི་ཤུ་བཟོ་བའི་ 用土坯建造的	grandson ཚ་བོ། 孙子
apologize དགོངས་དག་ལྷ། 道歉	healthy བདེ་ཐང་། 健康
arrest འཛིན་བཟུང་བྱེད་པ། 逮捕	high-heeled རྟིང་ཚོག་ལྷན་ལྷན་ཕྱི་མཐོ། 高跟鞋
aside ཟུར་བྲ། 旁边	intelligent རིག་པ་རྣམས། 聪明
attention དམིགས་པ། 注意力	intended བསམ་བཞིན་བྲ། 有意的
bitter དཀའ་ལྷུག་ཆེ་བ། 艰苦	kettle དམ། (茶) 壶
blond མེ་མུ། 亚麻色的	monastery དགོན་པ། 寺
brush (v) བྱ་ལ། 擦	nevertheless འོན་ཏེ་ཡང་། 但是
caterpillar fungus དབྱར་མུ་དགུན་འབྲ། 冬虫夏草	nightmare མི་ལམ་ངན་པ། 噩梦
circumambulate མོར་བ་བྱེད་པ། 转经	obey ལ་ཉན་པ། 听话
confident ཡིད་ཆེས་ཡོད་པ། 自信	pity (v) རྟོང་རྗེ་བ། 可怜
consult མོ་བ་སྟོན་བྱེད་པ། 顾问	police ཉེན་རྟོག་པ། 警察
corpse མི་མོ། 尸体	pray མོན་ལམ་འདེབས་པ། 祈祷
create ལས། 做	prison བཙོན་ཁང་། 监狱
curly རྒྱུ་བྱི། 卷 (发)	prostrate ཐུགས་འཚལ། 磕头
deserve འོས་འཚམས་ཀྱི་སྟོན་པ། 应得	regret འཁྱོད་པ། 后悔
devil བདུང་འབྲེ། 魔鬼	resistance རྩོལ་། 反对
disappointed མོ་ལམ་པ། 失望	sharp རྣམས། 锋利
endure བཟོད་སྟོན་བྱེད་པ། 容忍	slap འགམ་ལྷུག་གཞུ་བ། 扇耳光
eyebrows མིན་མ། 眉毛	sorrow རྩུ་བ། 悲伤
fingernails མིན་མོ། 指甲	suicide རང་སྟོག་གཙོད་པ། 自杀
flames མེ་ལྷེ། 火焰	sunset ཉི་ཟུང་། 日落
fortune teller མོ་བ། 算命者	thirst མོ་མ་པ། 口渴
funeral འདས་མཆོད། 葬礼	warning མཐོག་སྟོག་པ། 警告
gossip འཆལ་གཏམ། 绯闻	wheel འཁོར་ལོ། (转经) 轮
grandchildren ཚ་བོ་ཚ་སྒྱ། 子孙	

Study these expressions.

I'm dying of thirst. མོ་མ་པས་གཏུང་བཞིན་པ།  
 ... can not bear something བཟོད་ཐབས་མེད་པ།  
 Over my corpse! ལུས་སྟེང་དུ་འགོམ་ཡུག་རྒྱུག་པ།

Discuss these questions.

- Do new brides sometimes argue with their mother-in-law?
- What would you do if your family member married someone you didn't like?
- Do your family members ever fight?

Drolma had a nightmare and awoke. She could not return to sleep, even though it was still dark outside. She sighed, put on her old robe, and got up. She walked to the kitchen to prepare breakfast. When she arrived at the kitchen, she heard mice scratching.

She lit a fire. The flames showed the wrinkles on her hands and forehead. She sat tranquilly beside the fire. She chanted scriptures and spun her prayer wheel. As she recalled the past, tears flowed from her eyes.

...

Drolma's husband died. After her husband's death, Drolma lived with her only son, Dawa. Dawa was a short, fat man. He had long black hair. Dawa had big bright eyes and thick eyebrows. He had a sharp nose. Dawa always wore a Tibetan robe and a knife. The knife made him feel confident and brave. Everyone thought Dawa was kind and friendly. Dawa loved to draw. When Dawa and Drolma visited monasteries, he looked at paintings while others prostrated and circumambulated. He always felt amazed when he saw those paintings. Dawa had never been to school. However, he could read some Tibetan. He could also write a little. He had taught himself. Drolma was often sad because they were poor and she could not send her son to school. Neighbors admired Drolma for having an intelligent, kind son.

...

Drolma returned from working in the fields. She was totally exhausted. She looked around. The room was messy. She felt unhappy when she saw the messy room. Then her son appeared and she felt happy. Drolma always felt happy when she saw her son.

Dawa saw his exhausted mother. He put down his drawing and ran to her. He helped her finish her work. "Mother, do you want a bowl of tea or a bowl of yogurt?" asked Dawa. She sat next to the adobe stove, removed her old shoes, and replied, "Bring me a bowl of tea. I'm dying of thirst."

Dawa gave her a bowl of tea. Then he said, "I'll fetch water. Mother, you rest."

...

It was a cold winter morning several years later. The sun rose weakly. Drolma was sitting next to the adobe stove, waiting. She had been waiting all night. Dawa had gone to the county town the day before and hadn't returned. Drolma was cold and tired. She couldn't see clearly. She decided to return to bed. At that moment, she heard knocking on the door. Drolma carefully opened the old door. She was confused when she saw a strange woman with her son. She invited them inside and sat, saying nothing.

The room was silent. Dawa did not look at his mother. After a long time, he said, "Ama, this is Derji."

Drolma didn't say anything. She was disappointed. Derji seemed to be a very strange woman. She had curly blond hair. Her lips were bright red. She wore high-heeled shoes. Her fingernails were painted different colors. Drolma thought Derji looked very strange.

Dawa suddenly said, "Ama, I want to marry her. She will come live with us. Derji will help you to do the chores." Derji silently nodded.

Drolma thought for a moment. Then she walked away. Dawa followed her. Drolma said, "Dawa, she lives in the county town. Life is comfortable there. Our life in the village is very difficult. We are so poor. You live in two totally different worlds. You have little in common. I am trying to help you."

Dawa replied, "I know, but she wants to live with me. She knows our situation. She understands. She doesn't care if we are poor. She loves me and we want to live together."

Drolma realized that she couldn't change her son's mind. She asked, "When do you want



to celebrate the wedding?"

Dawa replied, "As soon as possible."

Dawa consulted a fortune-teller. The fortune-teller chose an auspicious date. Drolma prepared for a simple wedding. It was a small wedding. Only a few friends and relatives came.

Drolma suffered after Derji arrived. Derji never obeyed Drolma. They often fought. Dawa always supported Derji.

...

One morning, Dawa and Derji left the house. They intended to come back late in the evening. Drolma was alone. She did her chores. She swept each room carefully. At sunset, she prepared dinner. All her work was done perfectly. However, when Derji and Dawa returned, Derji scolded Drolma. "Look at this messy house! Look at this horrible food! You can't do anything right!"

After many bitter years, Drolma had a grandson and a granddaughter. She loved them with all her heart. She took very good care of them. Nevertheless, Derji scolded and insulted her mother-in-law.

"Leave my children alone! You will pollute them, you horrible old woman!" said Derji. "Get far away from my children!"

Drolma pitied the children. She worried about their future. No matter what Derji said, Drolma was always kind to the children. She never stopped caring for them.

"Ama, leave our bedroom. Look at your muddy shoes. They'll ruin the carpet!" said Dawa. Drolma couldn't believe her ears. She stood there and didn't do anything. Dawa said it again. Drolma's mind was full of sorrow. What could she do? Suicide? Resistance? Her mind was full of black thoughts. Then her grandchildren appeared in her mind. She felt peaceful again. She thought, "Is it really karma? Do I really deserve this?"

...

Years passed. Drolma's grandchildren grew up. One day, Dawa stole a motorcycle with his friends. The police arrested Dawa and his friends. Dawa went to prison.

Derji became crueller than before. Drolma suffered more than before. She hoped her son would return quickly.

"Please invite some monks and chant scriptures for Dawa," suggested Drolma.

"Over my corpse!" Derji barked. "We don't have even enough money for monks. I don't have enough money to spend for my children. How can we spend money for monks? Do you have any money, old woman?"

"He's your husband. He's the father of your children! Don't you care about him?" asked Drolma.

"Bitch! You find the money and do it. He's your son," replied Derji.

The children saw them fighting. They felt angry with their mother. They ran out of the room, screaming.

Derji called them to return, but they ignored her. Derji angrily looked at her mother-in-law. She yelled, "Devil! You created this! You'll pay for it!"

Drolma cried. Tears flowed down her face like a river. She went to the monastery to pray. While circumambulating the monastery, she heard monks chanting. She felt tranquil when she heard that. She then visited a great lama who could tell the future. The lama had always helped her. For example, he had helped her find her lost sheep many times. This time she asked about her son.

The lama counted his prayer beads. Then he said confidently, "Mother Drolma, your son is healthy. He'll be out of prison in a couple of months."

Drolma was full of joy. She thanked the great lama and walked home happily. However, when she arrived home, her joy vanished. Drolma and Derji fought again, and the children cried.

...

Drolma looked forward to seeing her son. Days seem like years when you want something. Derji insulted Drolma every day, but Drolma said nothing. She waited.

Drolma's neighbors and relatives understood her situation. They encouraged her to leave her family. They invited her to live with them. One day, her brother said, "Sister, why don't you leave? Come to my home."

Drolma replied, "I've lived most of my life here. Our ancestors also lived here. I won't leave. I want to die in my home. I'll wait for my son."

"Can you really endure that bitch's insults?" her brother asked.

"What else can I do? Maybe it is my karma to endure suffering," Drolma replied.

"Sister, please think about my suggestion," her brother said.

"I love my son. Whatever he has done, he is still my son," said Drolma. Her brother stood and left the house.

Drolma turned her prayer wheel. She counted her prayer beads and chanted scriptures.

...

Several days later the sky was as blue as a beautiful lake. White clouds danced in the sky. The grassland was decorated with flowers. Birds sang beautifully. Drolma took her grandchildren to the grassland. She told them stories. She talked to them about her past. The children gave her all their attention. While they were playing, a neighbor came and said, "Your son has returned."

Drolma ran home. Even though her home was far, she reached there quickly. She saw Dawa and her eyes filled with tears. Dawa hugged her tightly.

"How are you Ama? How have you been?" Dawa asked. He seemed to be the old Dawa. He was like her young son Dawa, who never knew Derji.

Drolma brushed her tears away and replied, "I'm well." She couldn't say more.

"Ama, I wasn't always a good son. I'm sorry. I want to be a good, filial son," said Dawa.

"Did they beat you in prison? Did you have good food? Did you suffer?" Drolma asked.

"Ama, it was not bad in prison. I also had plenty of time to think," replied Dawa.

Drolma looked at Dawa. She felt he had changed. He had become a good man again.

Dawa and Drolma went inside. When the children saw their father, they hugged him. They laughed and cried. Dawa was delighted to see his healthy children. The children told Dawa everything. Their grandmother had cared for them, but their mother had not cared for them. The children told them that Derji had sometimes beaten them horribly.

Dawa felt even more sorrow.

Friends and relatives visited over the next few days. Dawa learned more about his wife.

"Dawa, do you know how much your mother suffered?" asked one friend.

Dawa quietly said, "I understand everything."

Dawa regretted the past. Now, he hated Derji. When he thought about Derji's cruelty, he hated her more.

Drolma prepared noodles for dinner one hot summer day. She had planned to cook rice, but the children had asked for noodles. When they were about to eat, Derji asked, "Why did you cook noodles on such a hot day? How stupid!"

Drolma apologized, and said, "If you don't like them, I'll make something else for you."

"Stupid woman! You always waste food," replied Derji.

"SMACK!" Dawa slapped Derji's face.

"If you don't like the food, then don't eat it. And you must never scold my mother again!" Dawa yelled angrily.

"You... you, slapped me," said Derji. Tears ran down her cheeks.

"This is a warning. If you insult my mother again, I'll do more than slap you," said Dawa.

Derji stood up and went to her room.

Dawa took his mother to her room. She said nothing. When Dawa was about to close the door, she told him to apologize. Dawa politely agreed. Then he told the children to go to bed. He went to Derji's room and slept.

The next morning, Derji stayed in her room. She didn't eat breakfast with the family. Drolma wanted to call her, but Dawa stopped her. Derji didn't come out of the room all day. This made Dawa very angry.

That night Dawa asked Derji, "What do you want?"

"Nothing," replied Derji.

"Why didn't you come to breakfast this morning?" Dawa said.

"I wasn't hungry. I had a headache," she said.

"Are you still angry?" Dawa said

"Not really. But you shouldn't slap me," she said.

"I hope you will be kind to my mother," replied Dawa.

Derji didn't reply.

Afterwards, Derji changed. She got up early to prepare breakfast. She did all of Drolma's chores.

...

Several years passed. Drolma grew older and couldn't see well. Her son took good care of her. Dawa collected caterpillar fungus in spring and Derji did the farming work. The family seemed happy.

Unfortunately, Dawa died one night without warning. Nobody could understand why he died. Relatives and friends came immediately when they heard. Gossip flew everywhere. Did Derji poison him? Did the gods punish him? Villagers helped with the funeral.

Drolma was visiting her brother when Dawa died. She didn't know what had happened. When Drolma returned home, Derji didn't tell her about Dawa. Derji worried that Drolma could not bear the news. All the villagers helped Derji keep the secret. Even the grandchildren kept the secret.

"Where has Dawa gone?" asked Drolma.

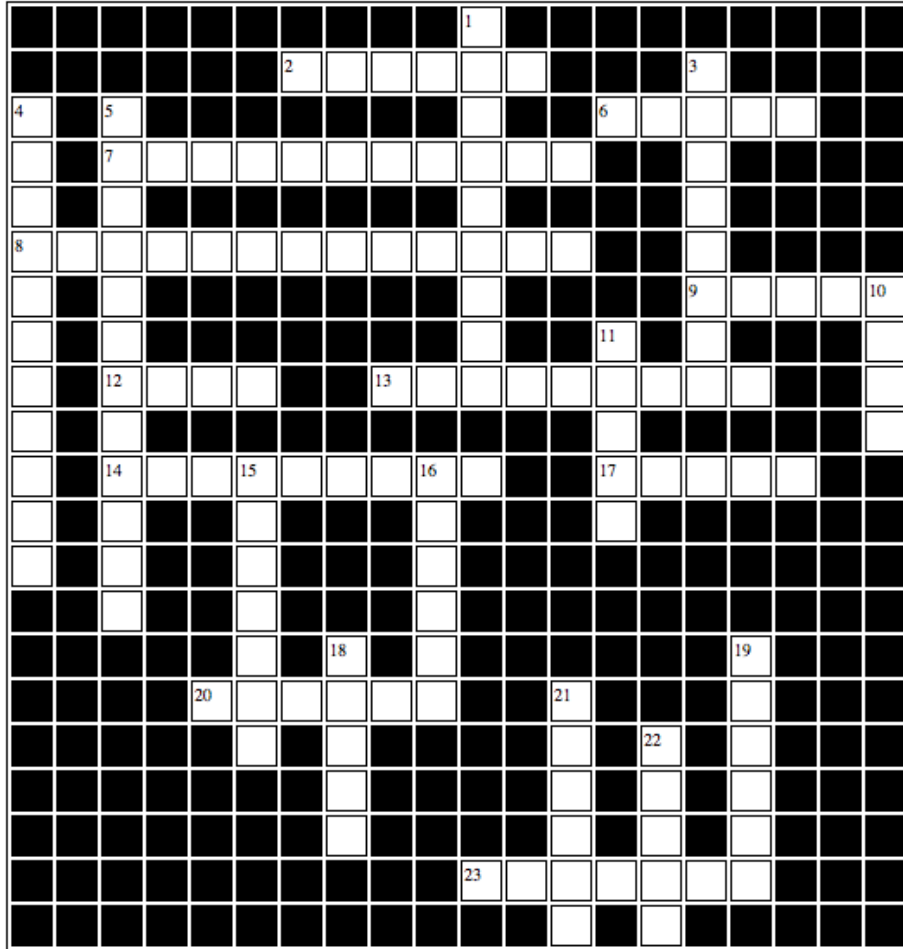
"He went far away to work," replied Derji.

The answer was the same each time Drolma asked.

...

Drolma heard something. The tea was boiling. She put her prayer wheel aside. She took the kettle from the fire, and had a very simple breakfast.

# VOCABULARY EXERCISES



## Across

2. Make something.
6. Hair is not straight.
7. Very clever.
8. Grandfather's son's daughter.
9. A knife can cut if it is \_\_\_\_\_.
12. Do what someone says.
13. Strongly believe.
14. Bad dream.
17. Yellow hair.
20. Want to drink.
23. A person kills themselves.

## Down

1. Pay \_\_\_\_\_ to the teacher!
3. Grandfather's son's son.
4. At the end of your fingers.
5. Something good didn't happen and you feel \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Feel sad about someone's terrible situation.
11. Dirt used to build a wall.
15. Not sick.
16. Wish you didn't do something.
18. Make your hair neat and tidy.
19. You boil tea in it.
21. People talk about other people.
22. Evil ghost.

Match the word to its meaning.

- |              |   |
|--------------|---|
| 1. apologize | _____ it is round, and a motorcycle has two |
| 2. bitter    | _____ you have this after someone dies      |
| 3. corpse    | _____ between day and night                 |
| 4. eyebrows  | _____ say sorry                             |
| 5. funeral   | _____ suffering                             |
| 6. monastery | _____ dead person                           |
| 7. police    | _____ where monks live                      |
| 8. slap      | _____ above your eyes                       |
| 9. wheel     | _____ they catch thieves                    |
| 10. sunset   | _____ hit, beat                             |

Fill in the gaps.

admire   arrest   circumambulate   endure   flames   intended   sorrow   warning   prison  
prostrate

1. After he stole some sheep, the police \_\_\_\_\_ed Tenzin.
2. The student could not \_\_\_\_\_ their teacher's beating.
3. My grandmother \_\_\_\_\_s the monastery every day.
4. After his wife died, he felt deep \_\_\_\_\_.
5. After lighting the butter lamps, she \_\_\_\_\_d.
6. All his classmates \_\_\_\_\_d his excellent exam score.
7. She looked at the orange \_\_\_\_\_ inside the stove and thought about her life.
8. Without \_\_\_\_\_ a tree fell on him and he died.
9. "I \_\_\_\_\_ to visit you yesterday, but I was busy."
10. The police put the thieves into \_\_\_\_\_.

Write Sentences

caterpillar fungus \_\_\_\_\_

consult \_\_\_\_\_

aside \_\_\_\_\_

grandchildren \_\_\_\_\_

nevertheless \_\_\_\_\_

pray \_\_\_\_\_

warning \_\_\_\_\_

deserve \_\_\_\_\_

GRAMMAR EXERCISES
-------------------

Fill the gaps with: have, has, had.

After many bitter years, Drolma \_\_\_\_\_ a grandson and a granddaughter.  
Dawa \_\_\_\_\_ gone to the county town the day before and hadn't returned.  
Did you \_\_\_\_\_ good food?  
Drolma \_\_\_\_\_ a nightmare and awoke  
How \_\_\_\_\_ you been?"  
She took the kettle from the fire, and \_\_\_\_\_ a very simple breakfast.  
The children told them that Derji \_\_\_\_\_ sometimes beaten them horribly.  
We don't \_\_\_\_\_ even enough money for monks.  
Whatever he \_\_\_\_\_ done, he is still my son  
Where \_\_\_\_\_ Dawa gone?"

Choose the correct verb form.

One morning, Dawa and Derji (left/ leave) the house. They (intended/ intend) to (come/ came) back late in the evening. Drolma (is/ was) alone. She (do/ did) her chores. She (swept/ sweep) each room carefully. At sunset, she (prepare/ prepared) dinner. All her work (is/ was) (done/ do) perfectly. However, when Derji and Dawa (return/ returned), Derji (scold/ scolded) Drolma. "(Looked/ Look) at this messy house! (Looked/ Look) at this horrible food! You (couldn't/can't) (did/do) anything right!"

Fill the gaps with pronouns.

Drolma's husband died. After \_\_\_\_\_ husband's death, Drolma lived with \_\_\_\_\_ only son, Dawa. Dawa was a short, fat man. \_\_\_\_\_ had long black hair. Dawa had big bright eyes and thick eyebrows. \_\_\_\_\_ had a sharp nose. Dawa always wore a Tibetan robe and a knife. The knife made \_\_\_\_\_ feel confident and brave. \_\_\_\_\_ thought Dawa was kind and friendly. Dawa loved to draw. When Dawa and Drolma visited monasteries, \_\_\_\_\_ looked at paintings while others prostrated and circumambulated. \_\_\_\_\_ always felt amazed when \_\_\_\_\_ saw those paintings. Dawa had never been to school. However, \_\_\_\_\_ could read some Tibetan. \_\_\_\_\_ could also write a little. \_\_\_\_\_ had taught himself. Drolma was often sad because \_\_\_\_\_ were poor and \_\_\_\_\_ could not send \_\_\_\_\_ son to school. Neighbors admired Drolma for having an intelligent, kind son.

QUESTIONS ABOUT THE TEXT
--------------------------

### Comprehension Questions

1. How many children did Drolma have?
2. Describe Dawa's appearance.
3. Where did Drolma and Dawa live?
4. Why was Drolma sad?
5. When did Drolma feel happy?
6. How did Dawa treat Drolma in the beginning of the story?
7. How did Dawa's attitude towards Drolma change after Dorji came to live with him?
8. What was different about Derji?
9. How did Drolma feel when Dawa first brought Derji home?
10. How many grandchildren did Drolma have?
11. What did the lama tell Drolma?
12. How did the children feel when Derji and Drolma argued?
13. Why didn't Drolma move in with her brother and leave her home?
14. How did Drolma treat her grandchildren?
15. How did Dawa act towards his mother when he returned from prison?
16. Why was Dawa arrested?
17. Where was Drolma when Dawa died?
18. Did Dawa suffer a lot in prison?
19. What did Derji tell Drolma when Dawa died?
20. Why was Derji worried to tell Drolma the truth?

### Discussion Questions

1. Do you think it was Drolma's karma to be treated badly by both Derji and Dawa?
2. What do you think about Dawa hitting his wife? Would you ever hit someone like that?
3. How did Derji speak to Drolma? If you were Drolma, what would you do?
4. Do you think Dawa was loyal to his mother? Why? Why not?
5. Do you think Dawa was loyal to Derji? Why? Why not?

### True or False?

1. Dawa was beaten in prison.
2. Drolma scolded Derji.
3. Drolma was very religious.
4. Derji often stayed in her room and did not speak to Drolma.
5. Derji sometimes beat her children.
6. Dawa's family is poor.
7. When Dawa goes to prison, the family invites monks to their house to say prayers.
8. Derji's children became angry when she argued with Drolma.
9. Derji asked Drolma to take care of her children while she worked.
10. Drolma visited a lama for help.

WRITING

How did Dawa and Derji first meet? What did they say to each other at first? Where were they? Write a short story.



# UNIT NINE

## RELEASED BY TRAGEDY

by Yangtsoji

PREPARATORY EXERCISES

Study this vocabulary before you read the text.

accuse གྱུན་འཇུགས་པ། 指控  
astonished ཏ་ལས་པ། 惊讶的  
attend ཞུགས་པ། 参加  
barrel ཟོ་བ། 桶  
baskets སྒེ་པ། 篮子  
bit ཅུང་ཟད། 一点  
boast རང་བསྟོད། 自夸，吹牛  
bony ལུས་བུངས་ཟད་པ། 瘦骨嶙峋的  
bother བར་ཆད་བཟོ་བ། 烦扰  
braid སྒྲ་པ། 编辫子  
briefly མདོར་བསྡུས་ངང་། 大概地  
calm རྒྱང་འཇགས། 平静的  
climb འཛིག་པ། 爬  
collapse ཐེབ་པ། 倒塌  
collect བསྐྱ་གསོག། 收集  
construction བཟོ་སྐྱུ། 建设  
couple ཁྱེ་ལྷན། 夫妻  
courage རྒྱང་སྟོབས། 勇气  
creased (adj) བསྐྱར་བ། 起皱纹的  
despite མ་གཏོགས། 除了  
disabled དབང་བོ་སྟོན་ཅན། 残废的  
disaster གཞོད་འཛོལ་གྱི་ཆགས། 灾难  
disobey ཁ་མེ་ཉན་པ། 不服从  
divorce གཉེན་ཚོ། 离婚  
dusty རྩལ་དྲེག་ཅན། 有灰尘的  
earn སྒོར་སོགས་བཅའ་བ། 挣  
elder (adj) མན་པ། 年长的  
energized གསོན་བྱགས་ལྡན་པ། 激励的  
especially རྒྱང་པར་དུ། 特别地  
finally མཐུག་མཐར། 最后地  
fist རུ་ཚུར། 拳头  
forbidden བཀག་སྡོམ། 禁止的  
frightened སྐག་པ། 受惊的

frozen (adj) འཇུགས་པ། 冻的  
generous གཏོང་མོད་ཅན། 慷慨的  
greet འཚམས་འདི། 问候  
guilty ནག་ཉེས་ཅན། 内疚的  
housework ཁྱིམ་ལས། 家务活  
inspired སེམས་འགྲུལ་ཐེབས་པ། 激励  
instantly རེ་མ་ཐག། 立即地  
interview བཅར་འདི། 采访  
job བྱ་བ། 工作  
lane སྒང་ལམ། 小巷，跑道  
mischievous བྲ་ཚགས། 调皮的  
mood སེམས་ཁམས། 情绪  
murmur ལུང་ལུང། 低语  
notebook ཟེན་བྲིས། 笔记本  
overcast མུན་འཐེབས་པ། 阴沉的  
overcome (overcome difficulties) རྒྱང་གསོད།  
克服  
overwhelmed མང་བས་སེམས་ཀྱིས་ཐེག་དཀའ་བ།  
繁多而不知所措  
remarry གཉེན་བསྐྱར་སྒྲིག། 再婚  
roof ཁང་ཐོག། 屋顶  
shift སྒྲར་འགྲུལ། 移动  
slave བླན་གཡོག། 奴隶  
spin བསྐྱར། 旋转  
spine སྒལ་ཚགས། 脊椎  
stoop ལུག་ལུག་བྱེད་པ། 弯腰  
straighten རང་མོར་བཟོ་བ། 挺直  
tender མཉེན་མོ། 嫩的  
tragedy སྐྱ་གར། 悲剧  
tremble སྐག་འདར། 颤抖  
whirled འཇུབ་མ་འཁོར། 回旋  
widow ལུག་མོ། 寡妇  
worriedly སེམས་ཁུར་ངང་། 焦急地

Discuss these questions.

Are there any widows in your village? What is their life like?

Whose lives are more difficult – men or women's? Why?

Can a negative event sometimes have a positive outcome?

If you could interview anyone in your village, who would you interview? Why?

WRITING
---------

What do you know about your grandmother's life? Write whatever you know here.

The winter sky was gray and windy. The village was wrapped in the smoke that poured from houses' chimneys. The Yellow River was very blue and calm, despite the wind. Despite the bad weather, I was excited. I couldn't wait to visit Gangji. Gangji wasn't famous. She wasn't beautiful, or rich. She was a farmer, but her life experiences were meaningful.

I went to her home to visit her but she wasn't there. She was in the *mani* room, so I immediately went there. When I arrived, she was sitting in the sun. She was spinning a big prayer wheel with other elder women.

Gangji nodded thoughtfully when I asked if I could interview her. I sat down beside her. When I looked at her, I realized her eyes were full of tears. I felt my throat become dry as I looked at her. Her face creased as she closed her eyes. Tears ran down her cheeks. Her face was covered with deep wrinkles, especially her forehead. How many stories were hidden in those wrinkles? She wiped away her tears with her bony hands. Then she told me her story.

"I was born in Hor Village. I had nine brothers and sisters. We lived happily with my parents," she began. Tears appeared again as she remembered her past. I wasn't sure if they were happy or sad tears.

She started again. "My sisters and brothers married and left home one by one. When I was twenty, there was only my younger brother and I at home with my parents." She stopped and gazed at me. She said, "Just like me, when you become a woman, you will marry and move to another village."

I started to think. Local people believe girls must marry and leave their family. They must leave their aging parents and stay in their husband's home. Girls have no choice.

Gangji patted my hair and said, "Child, don't worry. When I reached twenty, it was time to marry. After I finished working in the fields one day, my parents told me that I would go to another village. I felt overwhelmed. I didn't even know the man I would marry. I really..." she stopped. She seemed hurt by this memory. Then, she continued. "I had to agree. I didn't want to disobey my parents." Then she spoke quickly, "I just went there, just..." but she didn't finish her sentence. I also didn't ask her to continue.

I wanted to ask her to continue immediately, but I felt uncomfortable asking. I just looked around, pretending to take interest in things nearby.

Gangji scratched her head, shifted her hat, and said "Oh!" She smiled at me shyly and asked, "Where were we?"

I answered, "You went there..." But before I finished my answer, she stuck her forehead with her fist and began to talk.

"Oh, look at me, what a stupid old woman I am! That day was a sunny, auspicious day. Everybody woke up early. My elder sister braided my hair. I wore my best Tibetan robe and a coral necklace. I was surrounded by my relatives. Then, I went to the groom's family..." She described her wedding as briefly as possible. Then, I thought she would continue. Instead, she fell silent. I didn't want to ask more. I just stared at her silently.

...

The sun seemed to be in a bad mood that day. Sometimes it shone brightly. Sometimes it hid behind the clouds. Now it began falling behind the mountains. This bad weather caused children to sing for the sun to appear again. Slowly, my memory pulled me back to my childhood.

When I was a young girl, I often herded goats with my younger sister in winter. We collected dung and put it in baskets. Sometimes we put baby goats in the baskets too. The winter weather was sometimes sunny and sometimes overcast. When we were cold, we sang together and asked the sun to appear again.

1ཨ་མ་ཉི་མ་ཤར་ཤར།  
2ཤར་གྱི་བུ་མོ་གང་ལ།  
3ནགས་རྒྱུ་འོག་ཏུ་འཛུལ་ལ།  
4ལག་གི་རྩ་མོ་ཐང་ལ་ལྷུང་ལ།  
5ཨ་མ་ཉི་མ་ཤར་ཤར།

1 Shine, shine mother sun.  
2 All the girls are frozen.  
3 They've run into the forest.  
4 Their bowls have fallen from their hands.  
5 Shine, shine mother sun.

When we finished singing, we looked at the sky together, hoping the sun would appear.

...

While I was swimming in this childhood memory, Gangji called to me. I stopped remembering, and said "Oh!"

"What are you thinking about? The sun has begun to set. It's almost time to go home, but I think we have a little more time to talk," she said.

I knew she was worrying about her chores at home. I felt guilty and said, "I'm sorry that I disturbed you. Would you like to continue tomorrow?" I thought she would agree, but instead she began to talk.

"He and I became a couple," she said. She didn't mention his name. I didn't ask his name, because it is forbidden to mention a dead person's name. So here, I won't write his name.

She continued, "We had two girls and a boy after we married. Seven years after our marriage, we wanted to build a new house. We wanted to move out from his parents' home. And..." she stopped, trembling. "We went to get wood from an old house. While we were inside, the roof suddenly collapsed. I was instantly covered. I had no idea what was happening. I heard my husband calling me..." She stopped again, choking back tears. "He was calling my name."

He called, "Are you OK?"

I answered quickly, "Yes, I'm fine," Then I pushed the wood off my body. I found him and pulled the wood off his body.

"Are you OK?" I asked worriedly.

"He didn't answer. That silence frightened me and stopped my heart. I felt something was wrong. My body began to go numb. Cold blood flowed up my spine. I finished moving the wood that covered him. I saw my husband. He wasn't moving. I shook him and cried out his name. It didn't work. He was gone. My head began spinning. Suddenly, everything went black before my eyes. I felt as if I was falling without hitting the ground. And then I don't remember anything. I don't know how long I lay there, but eventually people woke me. He was gone."

She bit her lip, and choked back tears. Finally, she covered her mouth with her bony hand, and cried.

I wondered, "What would I have done if I was there?"

"Oh, my fate was so terrible," she continued. "But, one thing I couldn't accept was..." she stopped. She looked at me and said strongly, "His parents accused me of killing him. They drove me out of the home."

I was shocked. How they could possibly say that? I murmured, "Didn't they know it was an

accident?"

She nodded and said, "They had lost their child. It was a disaster for them, but... did they ever think of me? I was suffering like them. I had lost my husband, but... they said..."

The sun had already set. The sky was already dark. Suddenly, a strong wind whirled dust and dry leaves around us. I realized we were both wiping our eyes. Was that because we had dust in our eyes or because we had sadness in our hearts?

"It's time to go home. We can talk tomorrow," I said quickly.

"Yes, that's right. I must go," she said and stood up. She shook the dust out of her old robe. I sat quietly as she left. We didn't say goodbye. I just stared at her back as it disappeared into the distance. "How bent her shoulders are," I thought, and then went home.

...

I chatted with my mother that evening when I returned home. I told her what I had heard that day. "I can't imagine why they treated her like that," I said.

Then, Mother told me the story of a woman from Jangjah, the village where she was born.

"A woman married and moved into another village. The family treated her terribly. She didn't want to stay there, so she tried to divorce her husband. Unfortunately, the family didn't agree. So, that woman started to walk with a stoop. She pretended to be disabled and stayed inside the home all the time. Even though she was useless, the family wouldn't agree to a divorce. She walked with a stoop for three years, but they still didn't agree. By that time, everybody thought she really was disabled. The family agreed to her divorce. The day after the divorce, her father joked, "Child, if you can straighten your back, please show us." She then stood up straight. Everyone was astonished."

After Mother finished, she said, "A girl becomes a slave in her husband's home after she marries."

At that time, I wondered if I should praise such women or... I really didn't know.

Women are sensible and strong. We hide suffering in our hearts. We never boast or show our feelings in public. That's the difference between boys and girls. We shouldn't feel bad because we are girls. Although society gives up on us, we can live simply and independently. These thoughts ran through my head that night before I slept.

...

The next day was sunny. The blue cloudless sky was like a mirror. The lonely sun hung in the air without its best friends, the clouds. Mischievous children played in the dusty lanes. The fields around the village seemed to be waiting for spring. I was also waiting. I was waiting to hear the old woman's story.

I went to her home. The first floor was made of stone and the second floor was wood. It was a wonderful house. Her grandson and granddaughters were playing in front of the gate. When they saw me, they shouted to their grandmother. "Grandmother, a guest is here!"

Gangji came out to greet me. She was relaxed, and sighed when she saw me. "You surprised me. I haven't prepared the house very well. Please come inside," she said. It was clean, but she hadn't finished sweeping. "My daughter-in-law has gone to her mother's home. She hasn't returned yet. My son has gone to visit a relative in another village. He also hasn't come back yet."

She was thus alone at home with her grandchildren. She talked as she finished her housework. "My husband's family kicked me out. I went back to my old village. My children and I lived with my brothers and sisters. They were poor, and it was hard for them to feed more mouths. I knew I couldn't stay long. I also didn't want to bother them," she said.

"We Tibetans traditionally call widows bad names. I knew it would be hard for me to remarry. So, I decided not to remarry. I thought I could take care of the children without a man," she said.

"I prepared to build a house near the village. I climbed the mountain to cut wood. Although it was a man's job, I did myself," she said proudly. "Even though it was a small house, we lived there. At that time, farming was difficult, since my boy was too young to help. Farming is usually a man's job, but I did it." She suddenly stopped and ran outside. She started drawing water from the well. I put down my notebook quickly and went to her.

"Please rest, I'll do it for you," I said.

"No, no. It's hard work for you, but I can do it easily," she said. She pushed me away and poured the water into a tall barrel. I knew it was hard work, especially for an old woman. But she was right. I was a student. I didn't know how to fetch water or do other work. I waited for her to finish. Then we went inside, sat down, and she continued her story.

"Even though life was hard, I was happy," she said. She put a big red apple in my hands. She was so generous, and I wondered how she had overcome the difficulties in her life. "How had she fed her children by herself?" I wondered.

She smiled and said, "My children married and left, one by one. The youngest was left with me. When I saw their happy marriages, I felt happy and relaxed. After a few years, I moved near the Yellow River before the other villagers moved here. I built a house very easily, because I didn't need to pay for the land," she said.

I was confused. "Why?" I asked.

"Because no one cared about the land then, especially the government," she said. I nodded. I thought she was very smart.

She continued, "Before Hor Village was on the mountain, we also had fields here, near the Yellow River. In 2000, most villages moved near the Yellow River. However, I got here first. I got the best place for free. I did construction work to earn money with my son. Gradually my family became rich. Later, my son married. He has five children. They all attend school. One is even in university. Now, I don't need to worry about anything. I was actually set free after I left my husband's home. Really, I feel free," she said joyfully.

I felt inspired. Why did I feel like that? Her life had been so difficult.

Then, she began cooking lunch. She asked me to eat with her family, but I didn't stay. I wanted to go write her story. The sun was already high in the sky. A gentle wind blew on my face. Everything was energized. The trees were more tender than before. The grass was greener than before.

Sometimes, a tragedy can be the beginning of something wonderful. Sadness can become strength. A loss can become an opportunity. I had new courage to face my future.

## VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Which word does not belong?

1. astonished, disabled, whirled, energized, inspired
2. barrel, courage, divorce, fist, notebook, slave
3. worriedly, instantly, finally, briefly, dusty
4. stoop, spin, remarry, earn, disaster
5. bony, disabled, fist, spine, roof

Fill in the gaps.

bother   construction   attend   despite   creased   frightened   greet   lane   mischievous  
overwhelmed

1. My parents usually go to do \_\_\_\_\_ work in spring.
2. I like it here, \_\_\_\_\_ the hot weather.
3. I was very \_\_\_\_\_ when I heard a strange noise one night.
4. Please don't \_\_\_\_\_ me, I'm working.
5. My sister was a very \_\_\_\_\_ girl when we were young.
6. Tomorrow I will \_\_\_\_\_ an important meeting at school.
7. There is a narrow \_\_\_\_\_ behind my house.
8. I'm really \_\_\_\_\_ by all the homework we have these days.
9. My mother and father went out to \_\_\_\_\_ the guest.

Match the word to its opposite.

- |              |                |
|--------------|----------------|
| 1. tragedy   | _____ tired    |
| 2. slave     | _____ floor    |
| 3. overcast  | _____ master   |
| 4. murmur    | _____ marriage |
| 5. guilty    | _____ comedy   |
| 6. generous  | _____ obey     |
| 7. energized | _____ sunny    |
| 8. divorce   | _____ shout    |
| 9. disobey   | _____ innocent |
| 10. roof     | _____ stingy   |

Make sentences with one word from A and one from B.

A: accuse, attend, boast, climb, collect, earn, greet, remarry, shift, spin, stoop, tremble

B: widow, spine, slave, roof, notebook, mood, job, interview, housework, couple

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_



# GRAMMAR EXERCISES

Fill in the gaps with: if, away, beside, in, at, as, with, of.

Gangji nodded thoughtfully when I asked \_\_\_\_\_ I could interview her. I sat down \_\_\_\_\_ her. When I looked \_\_\_\_\_ her, I realized her eyes were full \_\_\_\_\_ tears. I felt my throat become dry \_\_\_\_\_ I looked at her. Her face creased \_\_\_\_\_ she closed her eyes. Tears ran down her cheeks. Her face was covered \_\_\_\_\_ deep wrinkles, especially her forehead. How many stories were hidden \_\_\_\_\_ those wrinkles? She wiped \_\_\_\_\_ her tears \_\_\_\_\_ her bony hands. Then she told me her story.

Fill in the gaps with conjunctions: because, but, and, even though, or

I built a house very easily, \_\_\_\_\_ I didn't need to pay for the land

I didn't know how to fetch water \_\_\_\_\_ do other work.

\_\_\_\_\_ life was hard, I was happy.

I don't know how long I lay there, \_\_\_\_\_ eventually people woke me.

I wasn't sure if they were happy \_\_\_\_\_ sad tears.

I went to her home to visit her \_\_\_\_\_ she wasn't there.

\_\_\_\_\_ she was useless, the family wouldn't agree to a divorce.

I wore my best Tibetan robe \_\_\_\_\_ a coral necklace.

She was a farmer, \_\_\_\_\_ her life experiences were meaningful.

She wasn't beautiful \_\_\_\_\_ rich.

\_\_\_\_\_ it was a small house, we lived there.

The winter sky was gray \_\_\_\_\_ windy.

The winter weather was sometimes sunny \_\_\_\_\_ sometimes overcast.

The Yellow River was very blue \_\_\_\_\_ calm, despite the wind.

Was that because we had dust in our eyes \_\_\_\_\_ because we had sadness in our hearts?

Fill in the gaps with pronouns.

Oh, look at \_\_\_\_\_, what a stupid old woman \_\_\_\_\_ am! That day was a sunny,

auspicious day. \_\_\_\_\_ woke up early. \_\_\_\_\_ elder sister braided \_\_\_\_\_ hair.

\_\_\_\_\_ wore my best Tibetan robe and a coral necklace. \_\_\_\_\_ was surrounded by

\_\_\_\_\_ relatives. Then, \_\_\_\_\_ went to the groom's family..." \_\_\_\_\_ described

her wedding as briefly as possible. Then, \_\_\_\_\_ thought \_\_\_\_\_ would continue.

Instead, \_\_\_\_\_ fell silent. \_\_\_\_\_ didn't want to ask more. \_\_\_\_\_ just stared at

\_\_\_\_\_ silently.

Write capital letters, commas, and full stops.

women are sensible and strong we hide suffering in our hearts we never boast or show our feelings in public that's the difference between boys and girls we shouldn't feel bad because we are girls although society gives up on us, we can live simply and independently these thoughts ran through my head that night before I slept

Fill the gaps with: by, with, for.

\_\_\_\_\_ that time, everybody thought she really was disabled.

How had she fed her children \_\_\_\_\_ herself

I chatted \_\_\_\_\_ my mother that evening when I returned home.

I got the best place \_\_\_\_\_ free.

I knew it was hard work, especially \_\_\_\_\_ an old woman.

I knew it would be hard \_\_\_\_\_ me to remarry.

I was surrounded \_\_\_\_\_ my relatives.

It was a disaster \_\_\_\_\_ them, but... did they ever think of me?

My sisters and brothers married and left home one \_\_\_\_\_ one.

She asked me to eat \_\_\_\_\_ her family, but I didn't stay.

She seemed hurt \_\_\_\_\_ this memory.

She walked \_\_\_\_\_ a stoop \_\_\_\_\_ three years, but they still didn't agree.

She was spinning a big prayer wheel \_\_\_\_\_ other elder women.

She wiped away her tears \_\_\_\_\_ her bony hands

The fields around the village seemed to be waiting \_\_\_\_\_ spring.

This bad weather caused children to sing \_\_\_\_\_ the sun to appear again.

Choose the correct verb form.

"No, no. It's hard work for you, but I can (did/do) it easily," she said. She (push/pushed) me away and (poured/pur) the water into a tall barrel. I (know/knew) it was hard work, especially for an old woman. But she (is/was/are) right. I (is/was) a student. I didn't know how to (fetched/fetch) water or (do/did) other work. I (wait/waited) for her to finish. Then we (go/went) inside, (sit/sat) down, and she (contine/continued) her story.

QUESTIONS ABOUT THE TEXT
--------------------------

Comprehension Questions

1. Who was the author of this story?
2. What season was it?
3. Where was Gangji when the author came to interview her?
4. How many brothers and sisters did Gangji have?
5. What did local people in Gangji's hometown believe about girls?
6. What happened one day when Gangji came home from the fields?
7. The author began to think about her past. What song did she and her sister sing when they were children?
8. Next Gangji told the author about having children. How many children did Gangji have?
9. Gangji and her husband went to an old house to find wood. Why did they need to find old wood?
10. What happened while they were inside that old house?
11. Gangji moved the wood that covered her husband. What had happened to him?
12. Why did Gangji's husband's parents drive her out of the home?
13. Who did the author talk to when she went home that night?
14. What story did the author's mother tell her that night?
15. What happened after Gangji's husband's parents kicked her out?
16. Why did Gangji decide not to get remarried?
17. Where did Gangji build a new house?
18. How many children did Gangji's son have?
19. How did Gangji become rich?
20. Why did Gangji feel free?
21. Why didn't the author stay to eat with Gangji's family?

Discussion Questions

1. The author said that 'sadness can become strength'. Can you think of an example from your life when sadness helped you to become strong?
2. What do people say about widows in your hometown?
3. Do you think that Gangji's parents did the right thing? Why or why not?
4. In this story, the author interviewed a woman in her village. If you interviewed someone in your village, who would you interview? Why would you choose them? What would you ask them about?
5. Why is it important to learn about older peoples' lives?

True or False?

1. The author was a girl.
2. The author interviewed Gangji four times.
3. The first day the author interviewed Gangji, Gangji was unhappy.
4. Gangji killed her husband.
5. Gangji's husband's parents kicked Gangji out of their home.
6. Gangji's children never went to school.
7. Gangji built a house next to the Yellow River in 2000.
8. When Gangji built her new house, she got in trouble from the local government.
9. The author's mother told the author a story about a woman who pretended to be disabled.
10. Gangji was happy the last time that the author spoke to her.

WRITING
---------

Do you think that a tragedy can be the beginning of something wonderful? Explain your opinion, giving specific examples to prove your point.

# UNIT TEN

## RETRIBUTION

by Rinchen Dorji

# PREPARATORY EXERCISES

Study this vocabulary before you read the text.

afterward རྗེས་སྔ 向后	limp (n) ཞ་འཐེང་། 一瘸一拐
ahead མཐོན་དུ 面前	murderer གཤེད་མ། 刽子手
alive གསོན་པ། 活着的	normally ཟུར་བཏང་དུ 平常的
approval འཐུང་པ། 同意	pitch (v) ཕུབ་པ། 搭建
apron ཕང་ཁེབས། 围裙	prayer flag དར་ཚུག 经幡
avoid གཞུལ་པ། 避免	protector སྤུང་མ། 护神
ax ལྷ་རེ། 斧头	raincoat ཆར་ལ། 雨衣
blessing ཕྱིན་ཆུབས། 赐福	raindrop ཆར་ཐེགས། 雨滴
blinded མེག་འོང་པ། 失明的	rainy ཆར་བ་འབབས་པའི། 下雨的
charming ཡིད་དུ་འོང་པ། 可爱的	relaxing ངལ་གསོ་བྱེད་པ། 休息
cheese ཆུར་ར། 奶酪	respond ལན་བསྐྱུན་པ། 回复
damp ཆུན་ཁིང་གཤེར་པ། 潮湿的	responsible འགན་ཁུར་གྱི་འདུ་ཤེས་ཡོད་པ། 责任感的
deceased གཤེགས་པ། གུ་བ། 去世的	retribution ངན་ལན། 报应，罚
deity ལྷ། 神	riddle གཤམ་ཆོག་ཁེད། 谜语
depressing ཡིད་ལྷུས་པ། 令人郁闷的	ritual ཆོག་ཆུག་ལུ་མ། 仪式
dew ཐེལ་བ། 露水	rustle ཤག་སྒྲུ 沙沙作响
donate ཐོབ་པ། 捐献	sacred མཆོག་གྲུར། 神圣的
donation ཞུས་འདེབས་དངོས་པོ། 捐赠物	sacrifice སྦོས་གཏོང་པ། 牺牲，献祭
drenched ཐུང་པའམ་སྦོན་པར་བཏང་པ། 湿淋淋的	scripture ཆོས་དཔེ། 经文
drip ཐེགས་པ། 滴	shocking དངངས་སྒྲག་སྒྲུས་པའི། 令人震惊的
dumbfounded ཏ་ལས་ཤིང་ཏང་སང་པ། 愣住了的	shovel ཁེམ། 铲
elope གསང་སྒྲབས་ཀྱིས་གཉེན་སྒྲིག་བྱེད་དུ་འཛོལ་བ། 私奔	skillful ཐུང་དུ་ཆུབ་པའི། 娴熟的
embers མེ་ར། 灰烬	splash ཆུ་སྒྲགས་འཆའ་པ། 溅
enclosure ལྷས་ར། 围绕，围墙	stab གཙན་པ། 刺，戳
entourage འཁོར་པ། 随员	stained ཇི་མས་གོས་པ། 沾污的，染污的
expel སྤྲུགས་པ། 驱逐	statue འབག་སྐུ། 塑像，雕像
eyelashes རྩེ་མ། 眼角毛	steal ལྷུ་བ། 偷窃
float གཡེང་པ། 漂浮	storm དྲག་ཆར། 风暴
frog ཐུལ་བ། 青蛙	thick མཐུག་པོ། 厚
grateful ཇིན་ཆེ་བའི། 感激的	veil གདོང་ཁེབས། 面纱(罩)
hero དཔལ་པོ། 英雄	violent གདུག་རྒྱབ་ཅན། 暴力的
hoe འཛོར། 锄头	vulture ཐུ་མོད། 秃鹰
indestructible འཇིག་རྒྱ་མེད་པ། 不可破坏的	watchdog སྐྱུ་ཁྱེ། 看门狗
infinite འཛོད་མཐའ་མེད་པ། 无限的	

Huge shadows from dark clouds danced on the Rongrima Tribe's green grassland as the wind blew forcefully. Trees rocked back and forth violently. Grass rustled. The cloth of yak-hair tents danced in the wind like prayer flags. Women ran out of their tents to gather cheese that was drying near the tents. As the storm approached, everyone suddenly had unexpected work to do.

Thunder boomed as raindrops began splashing on the ground. Rain instantly drenched the banks of the Labtse River. The river was shaken by thunder and blinded by lightning.

"Where's the ax?" asked Nyimaji. She was nervous and afraid. Water was dripping from the roof of the black tent and wetting her hair. Thunder and lightning seemed like a battle in the sky. Nyimaji's heart beat quickly. Wangchin, her husband, sat beside the stove, looking nervous. Smoke rose from the stove and then vanished.

"Here you are, Nyimaji," he said. Instead of telling her where the ax was, he passed her his knife. "The ax must be somewhere outside," he said. His voice was normally very loud, but now it sounded strangely quiet.

Nyimaji stabbed the knife into the ground near the tent door. A hoe and shovel were also stabbed into the ground there. The sky was angry. Tools like knives, hoes, and shovels protected the tent from lightning during storms.

There was an altar at the back of the tent. At the altar were pictures of lamas and deities. Invisible deities and other protectors watched over the family from the altar. Wangchin rose as the rain poured. He walked to the altar. He took a handful of juniper leaves from beside the altar. "The lightning is terrifying," he said, and returned to beside the stove. He looked at the fire. It was almost dead. He used some embers to burn the sacred juniper leaves. As the juniper leaves burned, Wangchin said a quiet prayer.

The rain continued falling, and the Labtse River grew wider and wider.

Nyimaji stood near the tent door, looking at the rain. Wangchin worriedly said, "It's late. My mother will worry about me if I don't come." As time passed, Wangchin looked more nervous. Occasionally, he looked outside at his horse standing in the rain, waiting like a servant.

"How about waiting until tomorrow? Your mother would understand," Nyimaji said. The air was damp and depressing. The tent was silent for a moment. Wangchin and Nyimaji were like two stone images.

Wangchin gazed out through the tent opening. The distant mountains were invisible and the infinite grassland was covered in a thick mist. Wangchin studied the rain through the door, considering what to do next. Deep in thought, he realized he was being a coward. Disgusted, he gathered his courage. He tried to forget the thunder, lightning, violent wind, and terrible rain. A true man never changes his mind, and Wangchin had decided to leave. Nyimaji put a raincoat over his shoulders. Then, Wangchin walked out of the tent, away from safety, and away from his wife. He walked alone into the storm.

Nyimaji gazed at Wangchin's back. "Old people are like children; they expect their sons and daughters like children expect their fathers and mothers," she thought.

"I have the raincoat. I'll be back tomorrow," Wangchin said.

...

Wangchin had once been a stranger to the Rongrima Tribe. At first, tribal members only knew that he was from 'the east.' He had once been a farmer.

Though he limped, Wangchin impressed everyone with his abilities. He could

jump over a rope two meters above the ground. He was skillful at making furniture and houses. Even our lama praised him for his work. Despite these strong points, he was called 'Limping Wangchin' all his life.

People really began talking about Wangchin after he married a local widow. Some said he was a murderer avoiding punishment. Others said he was just like hired yak herders in Rongrima who later married local women. Rongrima Tribal elders nodded their heads in approval. It was clear that Nyimaji needed a man.

Villagers insulted and joked about Wangchin because of his limp. As the saying goes, sharp weapons are covered with rust; heroes wear old dirty clothes. Everyone was impressed when Wangchin challenged a villager one day. During a horserace, Kaldan approached him and said, "Limping Wangchin, please tell me the secret of your foot?" and laughed. Wangchin screamed. He held a knife and said angrily, "Come young man, let's see who goes to Hell first!" He waited for Kaldan to respond. Everyone was dumbfounded. They had never imagined Wangchin possessed such courage. Afterward, local people respected him.

...

The day after the storm, a man rushed home. From his mouth, shocking news spread to all the tents. One by one, men went to the Labtse River banks. They found Wangchin and his horse lying stiff and cold beside the river. Crows flew around, making ominous sounds. The crows perched on nearby branches. Later, vultures appeared, following the blood road to Wangchin's body.

Later, a lama was invited. Tents were pitched. The lama and his entourage chanted scriptures for the deceased.

Nyimaji regretted that she didn't stop her husband leaving that day.

Fate took Wangchin and his horse to find new lives. How tragic.

...

A year after Wangchin's death, another person died in the same way. People gossiped fearfully. The local leader called a meeting of the elders. All the elders spoke. They decided that two strange deaths was a sign that the deities were unhappy.

"This might be the beginning of more suffering. In my whole life, such things have never happened," said one very old man.

A very thin old man stood and said, "It is impossible to know what the deities want. Maybe we should sacrifice animals to them." The tribe did not usually kill animals for their deities. However, maybe they needed to sacrifice some animals because of the strange situation.

"I am Nyimaji's relative. I helped with Wangchin's funeral. It was very frightening. I have helped at the many funerals, but I never felt afraid before. At that funeral I had a very strange feeling. I think his spirit was taken by the mountain deities," the old man said.

All the elders listened and nodded their heads.

"Let's invite some monks to expel the evil," one said.

All the elders agreed. Some men left and went to invite monks and lamas.

...

People prepared for the ritual busily. Many tents appeared on the grasslands like mushrooms.

After the lama arrived with his entourage, they chanted powerfully for several



days. All the villagers came to receive blessings from the lama.

Tribal leaders and elders were very grateful for the lama's help. The leaders and elders encouraged people to give donations to the lama. The people happily donated butter and cheese to the lama and his entourage. They cried gratefully.

After the lama left, people were hopeful. They believed that the lama's powerful chanted would expel all evil.

...

The grassland was covered in sweet-smelling flowers. A beautiful, clear stream flowed among the flowers. Golden fish occasionally jumped into the air from the grassland stream. Frogs sat on rocks in the stream. White tents and black livestock covered the infinite grassland. The grassland was only this beautiful in July. Later, autumn would come and steal the grassland's beauty. This proved that everything is impermanent. Change is the only truth.

It was a quiet morning. The sun rose through a veil of mist. The grassland was covered briefly in dew. Smoke floated above the grassland. The air slowly filled with yak's voices. Among this noise was the sound of women patiently milking.

After milking all morning, Lhari untied the yaks. She smelled strongly like milk and yak dung. Her gray apron was stained with dirt and dried milk. That gray apron had once been black. Even though she seemed dirty, Lhari was a beautiful woman. She was the flower of the Rongrima Tribe. She had sparkling eyes, long eyelashes, and thin eyebrows. Her fair skin showed her age. Wrinkles gathered around her eyes. She had once had a beautiful smile, but after Wangchin's death, that smile vanished. Thinking about her past, Lhari stood in the yak enclosure.

...

"Are you all right?" Dorjee asked tenderly while they waited for a bus by the road. It was before dawn. The stars still shone in the sky.

"I'm a little worried. I'm married with five children," Lhari answered, her head down. Suddenly, she realized something. She had not thought about her children before she eloped with Dorjee, her lover.

Dorjee hugged her and whispered in her ear, "Thoughts of them will vanish like mist when we arrive. I promise." They waited for the bus, hugging tightly. They remained silent for a long time. Dogs barked in the dark distance. Dorjee and Lhari gazed at the dark road, waiting.

"I'm not sure we should do this. We became lovers several years ago. Nothing bad has happened," Lhari said. She thought about her children again. She couldn't decide what to do. Should she elope with her lover? Should she return to her family? She truly loved Dorjee, but she felt responsible for her family.

"Dear Lhari, please think about me? I'm tired of visiting you secretly. People will eventually learn the truth about us," Dorjee said. He gazed at Lhari's lovely pale face. Dorjee had met Lhari five years ago. They fell in love instantly. However, Lhari was married. During those five years, she was always afraid her husband would discover her lover.

"If we go back now, it will ruin us. What would we gain?" said Dorjee. Before Lhari could reply, they heard a bus in the distance. The bus stopped in front of them. Lhari was still not sure what she should do. Nevertheless, she followed Dorjee into the bus.

Lhari had left her home. She had left her family, her yaks, her mountains, her five children, and her husband. She had left them all for her lover. She felt guilty but Dorjee's love gave her confidence.

In a far away place, Dorjee and Lhari lived happily together until...

...

A yak shook morning dew from the grass. The yak's loud voice woke Lhari from her memories. Now she was back with her husband and her family. Her love for her children was indestructible. She had left them once, but now she would stay with them forever. A bright future was ahead of her.

Like a stone statue coming alive, Lhari picked up a milk bucket. As she walked to the tent, she saw that the sun was still behind a veil of mist. Smoke and mist floated above the tents. Would it be a sunny or rainy day? She was unsure.

At around noon, the burning sun shone over the infinite grassland. The sky was totally blue. There wasn't a single cloud. Lhari's yaks drank at the river. The family watchdog panted. It sat in the shade of big dead tree near the tent. Lhari and her children were relaxing beside the tent. They were happy and relaxed. Her children told each other riddles, for example, "What has no eyes but digs a hole?" Time passed happily as a cool breeze blew.

Gradually, the cool breeze grew stronger and stronger. Dark, angry clouds gathered in the sky. Thunder boomed in the distance. Lightning appeared in the sky. Lhari and her children ran inside the tent. Rain soon drenched the tent.

The children hid at the back of the tent. Whenever lighting flashed, the children screamed. Every time thunder boomed, the children cried. They stuck their fingers in their ears, shut their eyes, and pulled a blanket over their heads. Lhari stabbed knives and other tools into the ground near the door of the tent. She was thinking about Wangchin and feeling afraid. She stood near the door of tent, looking worriedly into the rain.

Suddenly, lightning stabbed into the tent. Lhari was thrown to the ground. The children called out, "What was that sound, mother?"

"Listen, it's over now," one boy said. He stuck out his head from under the blanket.

The children appeared one by one. "Mother! Mother!" the first one yelled. Then they all yelled.

Lhari never replied.

...

Elders whispered. Gossip flew around the village.

"A woman who leaves her children and husband deserves it."

"Fate is inevitable, there's nothing we can do."

"That's retribution."

...

The world seemed fresh after the rain. The dust had been washed from stones and flowers. The sky was clear and empty. The sun threw clear light over the grassland like a blanket. Birds flew through the air, singing. Just like Lhari's face had once been, the grassland was beautiful and charming.

## VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Spell the words correctly.

wdhoctag	_____	inedrtuscelbit	_____
vurutel	_____	enargueot	_____
rebsielsnop	_____	dfbednudomu	_____
racnoita	_____	deerspsgni	_____
nolamlry	_____	aplorapv	_____

Which one doesn't belong?

1. approval, rainy, dew, eyelashes, hoe, deity
2. violent, thick, grateful, ritual, dumbfounded, rainy
3. rustle, steal, expel, donation, stab, float
4. protector, ritual, approval, grateful, shovel, veil
5. sacred, frog, ritual, deity, blessing, prayer flag, scripture

Match the word to its opposite.

- |               |                   |
|---------------|-------------------|
| 1. afterward  | _____ dry         |
| 2. ahead      | _____ invite      |
| 3. alive      | _____ delightful  |
| 4. approval   | _____ behind      |
| 5. damp       | _____ before      |
| 6. depressing | _____ sink        |
| 7. expel      | _____ finite      |
| 8. float      | _____ dead        |
| 9. infinite   | _____ stressful   |
| 10. relaxing  | _____ disapproval |

Match the word to its meaning.

- |             |   |
|-------------|---|
| 1. stained  | _____ Water on the grass in the morning.              |
| 2. storm    | _____ Escape to secretly get married.                 |
| 3. riddle   | _____ A lot of rain, wind, lightning, and thunder.    |
| 4. raincoat | _____ Dirty and cannot be cleaned.                    |
| 5. pitch    | _____ Water falls, drop by drop.                      |
| 6. ax       | _____ Tricky words. Word game.                        |
| 7. cheese   | _____ Like a big knife. You use it to cut down trees. |
| 8. dew      | _____ A food made from milk.                          |
| 9. drip     | _____ Clothes you wear to stay dry in the rain.       |
| 10. elope   | _____ Build a tent.                                   |

GRAMMAR EXERCISES
-------------------

Fill the gaps with: on, among, in, into

The grassland was covered \_\_\_\_\_ sweet-smelling flowers. A beautiful, clear stream flowed \_\_\_\_\_ the flowers. Golden fish occasionally jumped \_\_\_\_\_ the air from the grassland stream. Frogs sat \_\_\_\_\_ rocks \_\_\_\_\_ the stream. White tents and black livestock covered the infinite grassland. The grassland was only this beautiful \_\_\_\_\_ July. Later, autumn would come and steal the grassland's beauty. This proved that everything is impermanent. Change is the only truth.

Write capital letters, commas, and full stops.

huge shadows from dark clouds danced on the rongrima tribe's green grassland as the wind blew forcefully trees rocked back and forth violently grass rustled the cloth of yak-hair tents danced in the wind like prayer flags women ran out of their tents to gather cheese that was drying near the tents as the storm approached everyone suddenly had unexpected work to do

Fill the gaps with: other, as, at, of, over, to.

There was an altar \_\_\_\_\_ the back of the tent. \_\_\_\_\_ the altar were pictures \_\_\_\_\_ lamas and deities. Invisible deities and \_\_\_\_\_ protectors watched \_\_\_\_\_ the family from the altar. Wangchin rose \_\_\_\_\_ the rain poured. He walked \_\_\_\_\_ the altar. He took a handful \_\_\_\_\_ juniper leaves from beside the altar. "The lightning is terrifying," he said, and returned \_\_\_\_\_ beside the stove. He looked \_\_\_\_\_ the fire. It was almost dead. He used some embers \_\_\_\_\_ burn the sacred juniper leaves. As the juniper leaves burned, Wangchin said a quiet prayer.

Fill the gaps with: a, the, an.

At around noon, \_\_\_\_\_ burning sun shone over \_\_\_\_\_ infinite grassland. The sky was totally blue. There wasn't \_\_\_\_\_ single cloud. Lhari's yaks drank at \_\_\_\_\_ river. The family watchdog panted. It sat in \_\_\_\_\_ shade of big dead tree near \_\_\_\_\_ tent. Lhari and her children were relaxing beside \_\_\_\_\_ tent. They were happy and relaxed. Her children told each other riddles, for example, "What has no eyes but digs \_\_\_\_\_ hole?" Time passed happily as \_\_\_\_\_ cool breeze blew.

Fill the gaps with: though, even though, and, but  
\_\_\_\_\_ she seemed dirty, Lhari was a beautiful woman.

Fate took Wangchin \_\_\_\_\_ his horse to find new lives.

His voice was normally very loud, \_\_\_\_\_ now it sounded strangely quiet.

I have helped at the many funerals, \_\_\_\_\_ I never felt afraid before.

She felt guilty \_\_\_\_\_ Dorjee's love gave her confidence.

She truly loved Dorjee, \_\_\_\_\_ she felt responsible for her family.

The river was shaken by thunder \_\_\_\_\_ blinded by lightning.

They were happy \_\_\_\_\_ relaxed.

\_\_\_\_\_ he limped, Wangchin impressed everyone with his abilities.

Trees rocked back \_\_\_\_\_ forth violently.

Villagers insulted \_\_\_\_\_ joked about Wangchin because of his limp.

Fill the gaps with do, did, didn't, don't.  
As the storm approached, everyone suddenly had unexpected work to \_\_\_\_\_.

Fate is inevitable, there's nothing we can \_\_\_\_\_.

The tribe \_\_\_\_\_ not usually kill animals for their deities.

I'm not sure we should \_\_\_\_\_ this.

My mother will worry about me if I \_\_\_\_\_ come

Nyimaji regretted that she \_\_\_\_\_ stop her husband leaving that day.

Lhari was still not sure what she should \_\_\_\_\_.

Wangchin studied the rain through the door, considering what to \_\_\_\_\_ next.

Fill the gaps with: would, could, should.  
"I'm not sure we \_\_\_\_\_ do this. We became lovers several years ago. Nothing bad has happened," Lhari said. She thought about her children again. She \_\_\_\_\_ n't decide what to do. \_\_\_\_\_ she elope with her lover? \_\_\_\_\_ she return to her family? She truly loved Dorjee, but she felt responsible for her family.

"If we go back now, it will ruin us. What \_\_\_\_\_ we gain?" said Dorjee. Before Lhari \_\_\_\_\_ reply, they heard a bus in the distance. The bus stopped in front of them. Lhari was still not sure what she \_\_\_\_\_ do. Nevertheless, she followed Dorjee into the bus.

QUESTIONS ABOUT THE TEXT
--------------------------

Comprehension Questions

1. Describe the Rongrima Grassland.
2. Why is Nyimaji afraid at the beginning of the story?
3. How did Wangchin die?
4. Where was Wangchin from? What was he like?
5. Why did the lama and his entourage come and chant scriptures?
6. What did the elders talk about after the second person died?
7. What did Lhari look like?
8. Why were Dorjee and Lhari waiting for a bus?
9. What did Lhari and her children do during the storm?
10. When Lhari's children called out, "Mother! Mother!" during the storm, why didn't she reply?
11. Why did gossip fly around the village after Lhari's death?
12. What did Nyimaji stick in the ground during the storm? Why?
13. What was at the back of Wangchin and Nyimaji's tent?
14. How many children did Lhari have?
15. Why did Lhari leave her family?
16. What kind of person was Dorjee?
17. Where did Dorji and Lhari go?
18. How did people learn that Wangchin was brave?
19. Why did Lhari smell like milk?
20. What was the flower of the Rongrima tribe?

Discussion Questions

1. What do you think about the decisions that Lhari made?
2. How did people treat Wangchin at first? What do you think of that?
3. What is the meaning of the story's title?
4. Nyimaji was a widow. How do people treat widows in your hometown? Why?
5. Do you think that Lhari deserved what she got?

True or False?

1. Wanghchin was a widow.
2. Lhari died.
3. Nyimaji had five children.
4. The Rongrima River flowed through the Labtse Grassland.
5. Dorjee was Lhari's husband.
6. Wangchin grew up in a farming place.
7. Dorjee had a limp.
8. Wangchin went out in the storm.
9. The lama was invited to chant prayer flags.
10. Mushrooms appeared on the grassland like tents.

WRITING

Do you think Lhari deserved her fate? Why or why not?

Have you heard any other stories about someone suffering retribution? Write a story.

# UNIT ELEVEN

## TORN BETWEEN TWO LOVERS

by Yungdrung



## PREPARATORY EXERCISES

Study this vocabulary before you read the text.

accident ཆག་སྒྲི 意外	insist ཐུན་འཁྱུངས། 坚持
accompany རྒྱལ་ལྷན་ཁྲིའི་ལྟུང་། 同伴	joke ཀྱུ་རེ་བཞེ 玩笑
alcohol ཆང་། 酒	lend གཡུར་བ། 借
attracted ཡིད་འགྲུག་པ། 吸引	lover ཐུམས་པ། 情人
audience ལྷ་མཁན། 观众	male ལྔ་ 男性
beer ལྷ་རྩ། 啤酒	microphone མཛད་ཅུང་། 话筒
boss ཚོང་དཔོན། 老板	nightclub, club རྣང་མ་ཁང་། 夜总会
bumpy ལྷུ་ལྷུ་ལྷུ་ལྷུ་བའི། 颠簸的	performance འཕྲུལ་སྒྲུ། 表演
card ཤོག་བྱང་། (电话) 卡	pretend འཕྱོར་ཐུན་ཁྲིའི་ལྟུང་། 假装
cheap རིན་གོང་སྒྲ་ལྔ་ 便宜	professional ཆེད་ལས་ཀྱི། 专业的
clothing ཐུན་གོས། 衣服	slim གཟུགས་བྱང་མ་ལྔ་ 苗条
complicated ལྷོག་འཛིངས་ཅན། 复杂	sofa འབོལ་ཁྲི། 沙发
custom ལུགས་སྒྲུལ། 风俗	soup ལུ་ཐང་། ལུ་བ། 汤
dimples མཛེ་གོང་། 酒窝	sparkling འཛེར་མདངས་ཅན། 闪光
fee རྩ་ནུལ་ཡིན། 费用	upset ལེ་མས་སྒྲུབ། 难过
female ལྔ་ 女性	urge (v) ལྷུ་ལ་འདེབས་ཁྲིའི་ལྟུང་། 催
handbag ལག་ཁྲུག་ 手提包	zoo ལྷོག་ཆག་ཁྲིའི་ག་ 动物园
injure ལྷུ་སྒྲུབ། 受伤	

Discuss these questions.

Is it OK to have two boyfriends or girlfriends? Give reasons.

People sometimes do strange things when they are in new places, far from home. Discuss.

## WRITING

How would you feel if your boyfriend or girlfriend had another lover? What would you about it?

I was terribly sleepy on the way to Kunming, but the bumpy bus shook me from left to right. Several times I fell asleep, but then my head banged against the window.

A man dressed fashionably sat beside me. He offered me a cigarette and asked where I was from.

I said, "My name's Dorji. I'm from Ganzi County. I'm going to Kunming to care for my sister in the hospital. She's was a student in Kunming, but then she became sick and needed to go to hospital. " I politely refused the cigarette because I do not smoke. We chatted, and he invited me to have lunch with him when the bus reached the lunch stop.

The fashionably-dressed man was a government official in Kunming. His name was Nibushigu, and he was Yi. He gave me his phone number and encouraged me to call him if I needed help. When we arrived in Kunming, a nice car picked him up.

I reached the hospital where my seventeen-year-old sister was. The hospital fee was high. So, in a few days, the 3,000 RMB I had brought from home was gone. The doctor told me to prepare another 2,000 RMB. He said Sister needed to stay in the hospital at least two more weeks. I did not tell Sister about this because I did not want her to worry. I also did not tell my family. I knew that my family had no money to send.

After thinking about it for a day, I phoned Nibushigu. He said he was very busy and said he would call me later. I returned to the hospital, my heart full of worry. I thought Nibushigu would never call me again. "Why should he help a stranger?" I thought.

Sister noticed my depression when I returned and asked me what had happened. I said I was only worried about her studies and told her to read her books.

Unexpectedly, Nibushigu called me the next day. He gave me the name of a restaurant where we could meet. I happily went there and found a group of people sitting at a table in an expensive restaurant. Nibushigu was sitting at the center of the table in the seat of honor.

Nibushigu stood as I approached. Everyone shook hands with me and Nibushigu introduced me.

As I ate with them, they offered me some beer. I told them that I did not drink. Then they urged me to sing. I sang one song. A pretty young woman asked me if I was a professional singer. I was embarrassed by her question. I said that I liked singing but had no singing job.

I accompanied Nibushigu to the toilet a bit later. While we were alone, I told him about my problem. He handed me 2,500 RMB and said, "Keep it. Consider it a friend's gift." Astonished, I stood in front of the toilet mirror. I had asked him to lend me some money but he had given me money instead. I wondered why he gave the money. I worried that he wanted something from me. I returned to the table and continued dinner. My mind was full of questions.

"Hi, Dorji. My name is Bamo. How's your sister?" asked the woman who had asked about my singing.

"She's fine and will soon return to school," I said.

"You said you're from Ganzi. That's a very nice place. I was there once. What's your job, or are you still in school?" asked Bamo.

"I'm a social investigator! When I find a job that pays enough, I'll take it, but that hasn't happened yet," I said, laughing at my own joke.

"Are you looking for a job?" asked Bamo.

"Yes, but after my sister gets well," I said.

"What's your phone number? I'll call you later, and we can talk about a job," said Bamo.

"I don't have a cell phone. Please give me your phone number and I'll call you," I said. I could tell she was surprised. These days everyone has a cell phone.

"How did you become Uncle's friend?" she asked.

I had guessed Nibushigu was her uncle. What a pretty girl! She had a sharp nose, snow-white teeth,

sparkling eyes, and dimples next to her red lips. I was really attracted to her. I pretended that I had not heard what she said. I leaned close to her and asked, "What did you say?"

"How did you become Uncle's friend? Do you have relatives working here?" she asked.

"Who's your uncle? I don't have any relatives working here," I said.

She explained that Nibushigu was her uncle. Then we talked for a while. Nibushigu was a city leader and his wife was Tibetan. They had lost their only son last year. He died in a car accident. Bamo lived with them. She did restaurant, night-club, and clothing shop business. She was twenty years old, which was older than me.

A tall drunk man interrupted our chat. He held Bamo's hand and said, "This is my girlfriend. I work for the government. You can call me Brother Wang." He also told me that if I had any trouble in the city, I should call him.

I thanked him and moved away from Bamo. I went towards the toilet. When I reached the toilet, Bamo was standing outside. She gave me a piece of paper with her phone number on it. "Call me tomorrow," she said. Then she left without her boyfriend. I thanked Nibushigu and left.

Next, I went to buy some beef soup for Sister. On the way to the hospital, I also bought her a new T-shirt. When I arrived at the hospital, Sister was reading a book. She told me that the doctor had asked her to pay the hospital fee.

Sister and I took our usual walk after she ate the beef soup. I asked Sister how much money she needed. "About 1,500 RMB," she said.

I said, "I'm going to find a part-time job."

The next day I paid the hospital fee and called Bamo. She asked me to meet her at the gate of the zoo. When I got there, she said, "Dorji, do you like this city? What are your plans after your sister returns to school?"

"I like this place as much as my home place. People here are very nice. I want to find a part-time job here," I replied.

"I have a present for you," said Bamo. She took out a small box from her handbag, and gave it to me. It was a cell phone with a phone card already inside.

"It must have cost a lot," I said. I tried to return it to her, but she insisted I keep it. I thanked her and invited her to have lunch.

She said, "This is my hometown so I'll pay for you. When I'm in your hometown you can pay for me."

During lunch, she asked me to go to her nightclub and sing. She said she would pay me 2,300 RMB a month.

I was very happy but also worried. I had never sung in a nightclub before.

"You have a great voice. That's the most important thing. If you practice more, you will feel confident. Don't worry," she said.

Bamo asked to come visit my sister. She brought some fruit for Sister. They chatted for a while. After Bamo left, Sister said, "Be careful. Maybe she wants something from you."

The nightclub was open from nine p.m. to midnight. There were six male and six female dancers, and five singers. They were all Yi. I was the only Tibetan. Their average salary was about 2,000 RMB per month. The nightclub gave them a room to live in. I stayed in the hospital with Sister. I usually reached the club at seven p.m. to practice. Sometimes I came earlier because I wanted to see Adu. Adu was a very tall, slim dancer. Everyone at the club admired her. Sometimes, Adu asked me to help her prepare her dance.

Although I had no idea about dances, I helped her. Adu and I became friends. One day, only Adu and I were in the practice room. As she danced, she fell. I ran over to her and asked her if she was

injured. I put my hand under her neck. She laughed and said she was fine. I tried to get up, but her hand was already on the back of my neck. Adu sat up and kissed me. Then, we lay down together.

...

"Bamo, I'm afraid I'll forget the words when I sing," I said. It was my turn to sing next. I looked at the audience and saw many people. They were drinking beer, smoking cigarettes, listening to the songs, chatting, and laughing. Some were kissing in the corners.

Bamo said, "Dorji, come on! You can do it perfectly!" Then she kissed my cheek.

I blushed and held the microphone tightly.

"Welcome our young Tibetan singer - Dorji! Let's enjoy his song - The Beautiful Red Plateau!"

The music started and I walked onto the stage. As I sang, people came up and offered me beer, wine, and liquor. I had to drink everything. I was drunk when I finished singing. Bamo was waiting for me behind the stage. She was very happy with my performance and gave me a big hug.

I learned that people in that club offered alcohol to show respect for singers.

"What happened?" Adu asked me later that night.

"What do you mean?" I said.

"Bamo hugged you. Some say she kissed you. Why?" said Adu.

"She did it very suddenly. I don't know why she did it," I said. Adu was about to cry. I didn't know why. Maybe she thought I was her boyfriend and other girls shouldn't kiss me.

"Dorji, what are you doing?" Bamo called from another room.

"I will come soon. Please wait for me at the gate," I said.

"What will you do with our boss? Is she your girlfriend?" Adu asked.

"I have no special relationship with her. Don't be suspicious. She's just very kind to me," I explained.

"Really? No special relationship? Why does she always wait for you when work is over?" Adu asked. Then she started to cry, and hugged me.

I said, "Bamo drives me back to the hospital. It is too far for me to walk." I didn't mention that Bamu had given me a cell phone. "Listen, Adu. I'm not your boyfriend. Forget what happened."

"Fine. I don't want you to be my boyfriend."

"Are you still drunk?" asked Bamo when I got in her car.

I smiled and said nothing. She tried to kiss me. Every night when I got in her car, she tried to kiss me, but I refused. I touched my forehead to hers and said goodbye. Then I got out of the car.

The next morning Sister said, "I'll go to school next week. What will you do?"

"I must stay here at least twenty days. I promised Bamo," I said.

A couple of hours later my phone rang. It was Bamo. "Dorji, please come to the hospital gate," she said.

"Why?" I asked.

"I need your help," said Bamo. Then she hung up.

When I arrived at the gate, I saw Bamo's car. The door was open.

"Get in!" Bamo yelled. "Uncle is inviting you to lunch. Let's go to his home."

"Nibushigu already helped me a lot. He doesn't need to invite me to lunch. I should invite him," I thought.

When we reached Nibushigu's home, he and his wife warmly welcomed me. During lunch, Nibushigu said that Bamo often talked about me. "You're a nice kid," he said. "I'm happy I could help you."

After lunch, Nibushigu and his wife said goodbye. They left to go shopping. I was drunk. I tried to get up and return to the hospital, but I could not. Unexpectedly, I woke up about an hour later. I was

still on the sofa in Nibushigu's home. I couldn't see Bamo. I wanted to leave but not without saying goodbye.

An hour later, Bamo returned. "Where have you been?" I asked.

"I went to the hospital to take food to your sister. You were too drunk. How are you?" said Bamo.

"I'm good. Thanks for caring about my sister," I said. I stood up and Bamo started to cry. I was confused. "What's happening, Bamo?" I asked.

"I broke up with my boyfriend!" Bamo replied.

"What?" I asked.

"I like you," she said. She was still crying. "I love you. I want to be with you. That's why I broke up with my boyfriend."

"I'm sorry Bamo. My parents won't allow me to have a girlfriend who isn't Tibetan," I said.

"Do you look down on me?" questioned Bamo.

"No, this is the custom in my hometown," I said. Villagers don't like it when Tibetans marry other people. They look down on these couples. I held Bamo's hand as I explained to her. She stopped crying, looked at me, and kissed me. Even though I didn't want to be her boyfriend, I couldn't control my body.

...

After I worked for two weeks at the nightclub, Sister returned to school. I began staying at the nightclub's dormitory. My life became complicated. I had two lovers – Bamo and Adu.

The nightclub business was good. One day, Bamo invited all the performers to lunch. Adu sat beside me. I was drunk. Adu asked me to stop drinking. Then she asked me to return to the dormitory. When we tried to leave, Bamo stopped us. "He's my boyfriend," she said.

"Dorji, you can't have two girls at the same time. You must choose between Bamo and me," said Adu angrily.

"Dorji, you have no choice - I'll be a mother after a few months," said Bamo.

I was shocked. I didn't know what to say. I looked at Adu and then I looked at Bamo. What could I do? I ran outside.

I walked alone in the city for a long time. I regretted everything. I found a cheap hotel and went to sleep.

The next day, I went to see my sister. "I have to leave Kunming," I said. "I will send you more money when I arrive home."

Then I went to see Bamo. I told her I was leaving because my uncle was very sick. "He has no children and I need to take care of him." She was very upset but decided to pay me a month's salary.

The nightclub singers and dancers invited me to lunch. I only drank a little beer. I knew both Bamo and Adu would try to talk to me after dinner. I said goodbye after dinner and Adu followed me to the bus station. We went to a hotel together. She was very quiet. We went to bed and got up at nine p.m., because she had to return to the club. She said she would be sad without me.

Bamo came to see me at eleven p.m. that night. We chatted and hugged until the morning. Then I got on my bus.

After I returned home, I promised never to go back to Kunming again.

# VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Write letters to complete the words.

a \_ c \_ d \_ n \_

p \_ r \_ o \_ m \_ n \_ e

co \_ p \_ i \_ a \_ e \_

a \_ c \_ m \_ a \_ y

p \_ o \_ e \_ s \_ o \_ a \_

s \_ a \_ k \_ i \_ g

m \_ c \_ o \_ h \_ n \_

h \_ n \_ b \_ g

Make pairs of related words.

alcohol  
attracted

audience  
beer

female  
lover

male  
performance

1. \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_

3. \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_

2. \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_

4. \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_

Match the word with its meaning.

1. zoo

\_\_\_\_\_ Boyfriend or girlfriend.

2. soup

\_\_\_\_\_ A place to sit.

3. sofa

\_\_\_\_\_ A place where animals live in cages.

4. boss

\_\_\_\_\_ A liquid food.

5. card

\_\_\_\_\_ Give something to someone for a short time.

6. fee

\_\_\_\_\_ Say something funny.

7. joke

\_\_\_\_\_ Thin.

8. lend

\_\_\_\_\_ A leader.

9. lover

\_\_\_\_\_ Pay something.

10. slim

\_\_\_\_\_ A game you can play.

Match the word with its opposite.

1. audience

\_\_\_\_\_ simple

2. bumpy

\_\_\_\_\_ male

3. cheap

\_\_\_\_\_ performer

4. complicated

\_\_\_\_\_ fat

5. female

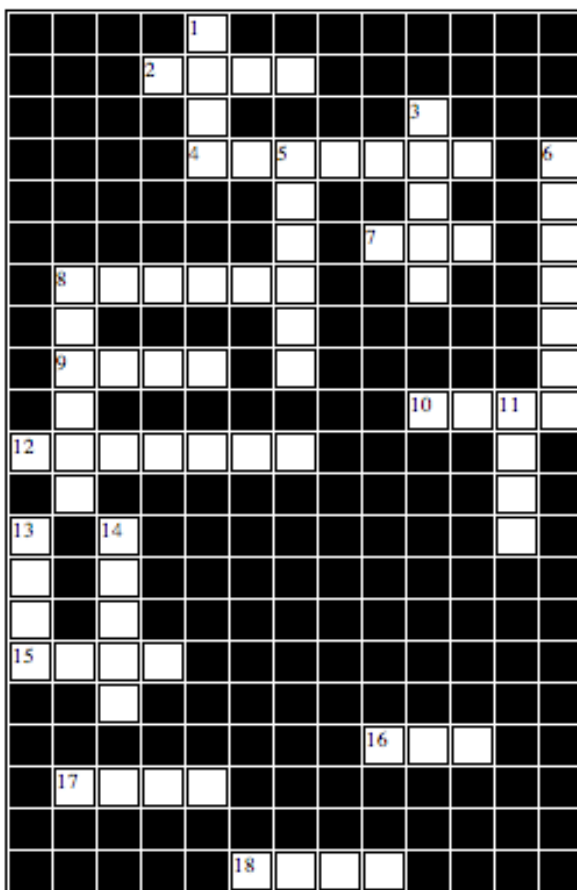
\_\_\_\_\_ smooth

6. slim

\_\_\_\_\_ happy

7. upset

\_\_\_\_\_ expensive



### Across

2. Hot, liquid food.
4. Beer, wine, liquor.
7. Pay something as a punishment.
8. You say that someone must do something.
9. Say something funny.
10. Leader of a company.
12. Not really doing something.
15. A type of alcohol. It is yellow.
16. A place where animals live in cages.
17. Encourage.
18. Man or boy.

### Down

1. A long comfortable place to sit in the lounge room.
3. A boyfriend or girlfriend.
5. Tradition.
6. Cute marks on a face.
8. Hurt. Harm. Cause pain.
11. Thin. Not fat.
13. A place where people drink alcohol and watch performances.
14. Unhappy.

Spell the words correctly.

cocialetpdm \_\_\_\_\_  
 nigbulcth \_\_\_\_\_  
 mipeohroc \_\_\_\_\_  
 prsesanoloif \_\_\_\_\_  
 atacrtdte \_\_\_\_\_

habdang \_\_\_\_\_  
 pecnamerofr \_\_\_\_\_  
 sprgnilka \_\_\_\_\_  
 acynapmo \_\_\_\_\_  
 aucneide \_\_\_\_\_

GRAMMAR EXERCISES
-------------------

Fill the gaps with pronouns.

A tall drunk man interrupted \_\_\_\_\_ chat. \_\_\_\_\_ held Bamo's hand and said, "This is \_\_\_\_\_ girlfriend. \_\_\_\_\_ work for the government. \_\_\_\_\_ can call \_\_\_\_\_ Brother Wang." \_\_\_\_\_ also told \_\_\_\_\_ that if \_\_\_\_\_ had any trouble in the city, \_\_\_\_\_ should call \_\_\_\_\_.  
\_\_\_\_\_ thanked \_\_\_\_\_ and moved away from Bamo. \_\_\_\_\_ went towards the toilet. When \_\_\_\_\_ reached the toilet, Bamo was standing outside. \_\_\_\_\_ gave me a piece of paper with \_\_\_\_\_ phone number on it. "Call \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow," she said. Then \_\_\_\_\_ left without \_\_\_\_\_ boyfriend. \_\_\_\_\_ thanked Nibushigu and left.

Fill the gaps with conjunctions: so, and, although, because.

\_\_\_\_\_ I had no idea about dances, I helped her.  
He offered me a cigarette \_\_\_\_\_ asked where I was from.  
He said he was very busy \_\_\_\_\_ said he would call me later.  
His name was Nibushigu, \_\_\_\_\_ he was Yi.  
I did not tell Sister about this \_\_\_\_\_ I did not want her to worry.  
I politely refused the cigarette \_\_\_\_\_ I do not smoke.  
Please give me your phone number \_\_\_\_\_ I'll call you.  
Sister \_\_\_\_\_ I took our usual walk after she ate the beef soup.  
Sometimes I came earlier \_\_\_\_\_ I wanted to see Adu.  
This is my hometown \_\_\_\_\_ I'll pay for you.

Fill the gaps with: up, to, both, after

The nightclub singers and dancers invited me \_\_\_\_\_ lunch. I only drank a little beer. I knew \_\_\_\_\_ Bamo and Adu would try \_\_\_\_\_ talk to me \_\_\_\_\_ dinner. I said goodbye \_\_\_\_\_ dinner and Adu followed me \_\_\_\_\_ the bus station. We went \_\_\_\_\_ a hotel together. She was very quiet. We went \_\_\_\_\_ bed and got \_\_\_\_\_ at nine p.m., because she had \_\_\_\_\_ return \_\_\_\_\_ the club. She said she would be sad without me.

Change the underlined verbs to past tense.

I had guess Nibushigu is her uncle. What a pretty girl! She have a sharp nose, snow-white teeth, sparkling eyes, and dimples next to her red lips. I am really attracted to her. I pretend that I have not hear what she said. I lean close to her and ask, "What do you say?"



Fill the gaps with: thing, something, everything, nothing.

I worried that he wanted \_\_\_\_\_ from me.

Maybe she wants \_\_\_\_\_ from you."

That's the most important \_\_\_\_\_.

I had to drink \_\_\_\_\_.

I smiled and said \_\_\_\_\_.

I regretted \_\_\_\_\_.

Fill the gaps with: take, give, get, brought.

He has no children and I need to \_\_\_\_\_ care of him

Yes, but after my sister \_\_\_\_\_s well.

I tried to \_\_\_\_\_ up and return to the hospital, but I could not.

So, in a few days, the 3,000 RMB I had \_\_\_\_\_ from home was gone

I tried to \_\_\_\_\_ up, but her hand was already on the back of my neck.

I went to the hospital to \_\_\_\_\_ food to your sister.

Please \_\_\_\_\_ me your phone number and I'll call you.

When I find a job that pays enough, I'll \_\_\_\_\_ it, but that hasn't happened yet

She \_\_\_\_\_ some fruit for Sister.

Fill the gaps with punctuation.

The next morning Sister said\_\_\_\_ "I'll go to school next week\_\_\_\_ What will you do\_\_\_\_"

"I must stay here at least twenty days\_\_\_\_ I promised Bamo\_\_\_\_" I said.

A couple of hours later my phone rang\_\_\_\_ It was Bamo\_\_\_\_ "Dorji\_\_\_\_ please come to the hospital gate\_\_\_\_" she said\_\_\_\_

"Why\_\_\_\_" I asked\_\_\_\_

"I need your help\_\_\_\_" said Bamo\_\_\_\_ Then she hung up\_\_\_\_

When I arrived at the gate\_\_\_\_ I saw Bamo's car\_\_\_\_ The door was open\_\_\_\_

"Get in\_\_\_\_" Bamo yelled\_\_\_\_ "Uncle is inviting you to lunch\_\_\_\_ Let's go to his home\_\_\_\_"

"Nibushigu already helped me a lot\_\_\_\_ He doesn't need to invite me to lunch\_\_\_\_ I should invite him\_\_\_\_" I thought\_\_\_\_

QUESTIONS ABOUT THE TEXT
--------------------------

Comprehension Questions

1. Where was Dorji going on the bus?
2. Who was he going to see?
3. Why was he going to visit her?
4. Where was Dorji from?
5. Who was Nibushigu?
6. What was Dorji's problem?
7. What nationality was Nibushigu's wife?
8. Who was Bamo?
9. How was she related to Nibushigu?
10. What was Bamo's job?
11. What was Dorji's job?
12. Who gave Dorji the job?
13. How much money did Dorji make in a month?
14. Who did Dorji like to see dancing?
15. Why was Adu angry with Dorji?
16. Why did Bamo break up with her boyfriend?
17. How many lovers did Dorji have?
18. Who was going to be a mother?
19. Why did Dorji leave Kunming?
20. What reason did Dorji tell Bamo?

Discussion Questions

1. What does a healthy relationship mean to you?
2. What did you learn from this story?
3. Do you think that Dorji was wrong to have two lovers?
4. Have you ever loved two people at one time? What did you do?
5. What would you do if your lover was pregnant? Do you think that Dorji was right to leave Bamo?

True or False?

1. Nibushigu was Bamo's father.
2. Bamo had a boyfriend.
3. Bamo gave Dorji a cell phone.
4. Dorji kissed Bamo first.
5. There were two Tibetan singers at the nightclub.
6. Bamo was jealous because Adu hugged Dorji.
7. Bamo broke up with her boyfriend.
8. Dorji wanted to be Bamo's boyfriend.
9. Bamo broke up with Dorji.
10. Dorji promised to return to Kunming.

WRITING

Rewrite part of this story from Bamo or Adu's perspective.

# UNIT TWELVE

## WHO IS TO BLAME?

by Lujia Bum

# PREPARATORY EXERCISES

Study this vocabulary before you read the text.

agony ལྷག་བསྐལ་སྦྱེས་པ། 痛苦，创痛	irrigation ལྷ་མ། 灌溉
ashamed རྩོམ་པ། 惭愧的，羞耻的，害臊的	jealous ལྷག་དྲི་བ། 妒忌的
bastard ལྷག་བཟན། 坏蛋，混蛋	kindhearted ལྷམ་པ་བཟང་ཅན། 好心的
belt ལྷ་རེག་ལ། 腰带，皮带；	ladder ལྷམ་སྒྲི། 梯子；阶梯
blush རྩོམ་ནས་གདོང་དམར་པོར་གྱུར་པ། 脸红	magic ལྷ་འབྲུལ། 魔术
broom ལྷག་མ། 扫帚	messenger འཕྲིན་སྦྱེལ་མཁན། 送信人
complain ལས་འདོད་པ། 抱怨，诉苦	meter ལྷི། 米
compliment (v) བསྟོད་པ་བྱེད་པ། 赞美	mistreat མནར་གཅོད་གཏོང་བ། 虐待
crazy ལྷོན་པ། 发疯的	monster གདོན་འདྲེ། 怪物
creep/ crept བཞོག་ནས་འགྲོ་བ། 爬行	nunnery རྩོམ་དགོན་པ། 女修道院
embarrassing དྲིགས་མི་བདེ་བ།	outgoing རྩེད་གཤམ་ཅན། 开朗的
fascinated ཡིད་འགྲུག་ཐེབས་པའི། 强烈地吸引，迷住	pacify ལྷ་འཇགས་བཟོ་བ། 使镇静
feud ལྷོ། 宿怨，不和	playground ལྷས་རྩལ་ར་བ། (学校的)操场
fled ལྷས་བྱུལ། 逃离	reputation མཚན་སྒྲན་གྲགས། 名气，名声
forgiveness ལྷ་ཡངས། 原谅，饶恕	salary ལྷ་ཕྱག་ 薪水
furious ལྷོ་བ། 暴怒的	senior ལྷན་པ་འཕམ་ལོ་ཆེ་བ། 年长的
gun མེ་འདལ། 枪，炮	(prison) sentence ལྷམས་ཐག་བཅད་པ། 判决
hindquarters ལྷག་པ། 后肢，后腿	sincerely ལྷས་འདུད་དང་བཅས། 真诚地
holidays ལྷ་མེད། 假期	snack ལ་ཟས་སྒྲུབས་བདེ། ལེལ་ཟས། 快餐，小吃
humorous དགོད་སྤོ་བའི། 幽默的	solution ཐག་གཅོད་བྱེད་ཐབས། 解决办法
imprison བཙོན་འཇགས་བྱས་པ། 监禁	sophisticated གཉོག་ཏུ་ཅན་གྱི། 复杂的
irreconcilable འོས་འཚམ་མིན་པ། 不妥协的	unpredictable ལྷོན་དཔག་བྱེད་མི་ཐུབ་པའི། 不可预测的
irrigate ལྷང་ལ་ལྷ་གཏོང་བ། 灌溉	

Discuss these questions.

Has there ever been a feud in your village? Who was feuding? Why did they feud? How long did they feud for?

Do people ever fight because of irrigation in your village?

How can feuds be stopped?

Do you think reputation is important?

The summer afternoon sun beat down harshly. Everyone felt they were being boiled in a pot. Everyone complained that the sun was destroying the crops. However, people's words were useless. The situation would only change when clouds gathered. Gradually, people complained less.

I was watching my favorite TV show at home that afternoon. I felt relaxed. Then, just after a snack, I heard a wild cry from outside. Terror rose in my heart. I had never heard such a wild cry. I had heard babies crying for their mothers. I had heard children crying because they had been beaten. But I had never heard such a wild cry. My heart began pounding. My breathing seemed to stop. I listened, waiting for more. Nothing happened. Gradually, I became normal again. However, I kept thinking that something terrible had happened. I stood slowly. Then, I heard the cry again. My fear returned with new intensity. I climbed up the ladder to the roof of our house. I saw many people surrounding someone. I was too far away to see clearly. So, I climbed down from the roof and ran to the crowd.

A man lay on the ground. His body was covered in blood. He wasn't breathing. His face was white. His expression showed intense suffering.

He had been stabbed in the gut with a knife. He was dead. A woman held him. I had heard her wild cry. She cried as though *her* life had ended. People tried to console her, but she ignored them. The dead man was her lover. She was overwhelmed with grief. Even though her parents were still alive, she felt alone. Her lover had died, and she did not want to continue alone.

I heard people murmuring. "She's crazy." "What a terrible fate..." The two lovers had a long history. All the villagers knew about it. Even children knew it all. Palden and Drolma had loved each other for eight years.

Palden was twenty-six when he died. Drolma was a year younger. Most villagers their age were married with two or three children. However, Palden and Drolma had never married, because of a long feud between their families. Even though the two lovers knew about the feud, they loved each other anyway.

The feud started because of irrigation water. In this farming village, many families feud about irrigation water. The feuds usually end quickly.

When the feud started, Palden and Drolma were in senior middle school. They were from the same village and they were in the same class. However, they did not know each other well. Palden was a gifted writer, sang popular songs well, was good-looking, and was knowledgeable. Teachers complimented him, and his classmates admired him. All the students gossiped about Palden. When girls talked to him, they acted like Palden was a Hollywood superstar.

Drolma was neither a great student nor a bad student. Teachers and classmates were nice to her. She was outgoing, humorous, and friendly. She was beautiful, so many girls were jealous of her, and many boys chased her.

Both Palden and Drolma were kind to everyone and were never arrogant. When the feud between their families began, Palden and Drolma were in school. They didn't know about the feud in their village. However, two days after the feud started, they heard about it.

"Hey! Palden! Your family is fighting Drolma's," Palden's classmate said one afternoon.

"What? Fighting about what?" asked Palden. He could not believe it.

"They're fighting about irrigation water," said his classmate, shaking his head.

"Oh, really? " Palden replied. Fighting about water is common, because villagers take turns irrigating their fields. Sometimes families steal water from other families, and then they fight. Palden was worried, because Drolma had three brothers, but Palden's father was the only man in the family. They had no relatives in the village who could help them. If the feud was serious, Palden's family would be helpless. Palden ran outside and called his parents.

"Hello, it's Palden," he said

His sister answered, "How are you?"

"I'm great. Is everything OK there?" Palden asked.

"Father was hurt in a fight yesterday," his sister said, crying. Palden suddenly became angry. He couldn't breathe normally.

Palden's sister continued, still crying, "Drolma's father and three brothers beat our father. Fortunately, villagers had stopped them. If the villagers hadn't rescued Father, they would have killed him. Our mother is caring for Father at home." As he listened, Palden wished he could take revenge. However, he realized it was impossible for him to fight four big men unless he had a gun or could study black magic like Milarepa. Palden didn't have a gun, nor did he know black magic, so there was nothing he could do.

A few days later, the situation became worse. Palden's mother was ashamed about what had happened. She wanted to fix the situation, so she called her brother. Her brother was an important official in the county town. Palden's mother told her brother what had happened. She begged him for help.

Drolma's family did not know that Palden's uncle was a powerful official. So, they were surprised when they were called to court in the county town. The four of them were deeply worried about it.

"Father, what should we do next month in court?" asked the second oldest son, Losang.

His father didn't answer immediately, because he was thinking deeply. Finally he said, "I'm sure they will fine us, and... "

"Then what will happen, Father? Tell us," his sons asked nervously. They were afraid of the police, and they were terrified of prison. They had heard that terrible things happen in prison.

"I'm not sure if they will imprison us," said their father. However, he was very worried, because Palden's uncle was a powerful official.

"Father, is there a way to avoid this?" the eldest son, Rinchen, asked.

"The only way is... we must beg them to forgive us," replied the father.

"What? I'll never beg that monster! I'd rather go to prison!" said Losang angrily.

"Yes, I agree," the youngest son, Nima, said.

"Shut up! I know it's shameful, but it's the only chance we have. We must try!" shouted their father. Villagers always laughed at families who begged for forgiveness. However, maybe it was the only solution. They decided to apologize to Palden's family. Two days later, Drolma's father went to Palden's house carrying two bottles of liquor, some cigarettes, a white *katag*, and a sheep's hindquarters. Before he reached Palden's house, a famous village gossip saw him.

"Hey! Where are you going?" she asked. She saw everything he was carrying, and guessed what he was doing.

"You can see for yourself," Drolma's father replied, knowing she would spread the news throughout the village. Then he quickly continued to Palden's house.

"Are you coming to beat my husband again?" asked Palden's mother angrily when she saw Drolma's father.

"Please don't joke, Sister. I came to visit your husband," said Drolma's father.

"Did you forget how you and your sons beat my husband?" she said angrily.

"I'm sorry about that. I came here to sincerely apologize," he said in shame.

Palden's mother held a broom. She ran across the courtyard, lifting the broom in the air. She stopped about a meter from Drolma's father, still holding the broom in the air. "What? You bastard! Shameless dog! Rubbish!..." she scolded endlessly.

He didn't know what to do. He just stood there, holding his gifts. "I know I was wrong, so I brought these things for your husband," he said, holding out the gifts.

She pushed his hands away and shouted, "We aren't hungry! We don't need your food. Get out of here! Now!" Her husband, lying in bed just a few meters away, said nothing.

Drolma's father felt terrible. He had been unsuccessful. To make matters worse, a woman had scolded him. He silently promised to take revenge for this insult.

When they first heard what was happening in their village, Drolma and Palden regarded each other as enemies. Secretly, however, they didn't want to be enemies. One afternoon Palden decided to have a talk with Drolma.

"Drolma, are you free now?" he asked after classes one afternoon.

"Yeah, for what?" she said nervously. She was worried because she thought Palden was her enemy.

"I just want to talk about our families' feud. Don't worry, I'll only talk," Palden said.

"OK, no problem," Drolma said.

"We don't have to be enemies because of our families, do we?" said Palden.

"No, of course not!" Drolma said.

"Great! In that case, we need to discuss something else," said Palden, smiling.

"What? I don't understand..." Drolma said.

"I think we should ask our families to stop fighting," Palden said.

"I see. I already asked my father, but he said there is nothing he can do. He must go to court in a few days," Drolma said, not knowing how she could help.

"Yes, I know. I asked my parents to stop, but they didn't listen," said Palden.

Palden and Drolma talked about their families and their school lives for some time. Both felt better. Drolma had always liked Palden. Her attitude towards him improved as they chatted.

Fifteen days after the conflict, the two families met in court. The judge ordered Drolma's family to pay a fine. The judge also imprisoned the three sons and their father for forty-five days. The two families then became irreconcilable enemies.

Drolma's father and brothers returned after forty-five days. Many people came to ask them about it. "We didn't suffer much in prison, because we always stood by each other." Afterwards, the feud between Palden and Drolma's families deepened. The two families never talked to each other. They never greeted each other. Drolma's father and brother talked constantly about revenge. Villagers tried to pacify them, but nothing worked. Fortunately, although they talked a lot, the two families didn't fight again.



Time passed like the wind. Drolma and Palden entered their final year of senior middle school. They both prepared for the college entrance exam. Palden was now nineteen and fascinated everyone even more than before. He hoped to enter a good college. Drolma was also a good student and her reputation as a beauty had spread far and wide.

Since their first talk, Drolma and Palden had become friends. They never blamed each other for their families' problems. Drolma thought Palden was kindhearted and generous. Gradually, she fell in love with him. However, she kept her feelings a secret. She wanted to tell him but, for a long time, lacked courage. One evening at a school dance, she decided to tell him. She called Palden after the dance finished.

When they met, she touched Palden's back lightly and said, "You danced very well tonight."

"Really? Thanks Drolma. So did you," he said, smiling.

"May we have a talk?" asked Drolma. She felt that this sentence was almost impossible to say. She was nervous about expressing her feelings.

"Sure, why not? You're not going to eat me, are you?" said Palden.

"No! Just follow me," Drolma said, and walked to the playground. The sky was filled with stars and everything was beautiful. A cool breeze blew, making them comfortable despite the heat.

"Hey, it's time for you to say something," said Palden. She did not know how to tell him, except to say it directly. It was embarrassing, but her friends said that such things were now common.

"I... I want... you... to... to be my boyfriend," she said. She blushed, shocked by her own words.

Palden liked Drolma but had not been brave enough to tell her. Now everything was like a dream! For a long time he did not break the silence, but finally said, "Hey Drolma, today is not April Fools' Day. Don't joke with me, OK?"

"Oh! I know today isn't April Fools' Day. I'm serious," Drolma said.

He knew she loved him. He felt lucky. They shared their feelings and, with a laugh, became lovers that night. They did not tell their families. As time passed, they helped each other in school. They helped each other prepare for the college entrance examination. They were both excited, believing that they had a good chance of passing.

Unfortunately, Drolma's score was low. Palden, however, was accepted into a good school. Drolma wanted to take the examination a year later, but her father ordered her to come home.

Palden went to a college far from the village, but he didn't forget Drolma. They secretly called each other. Sometimes, they exchanged letters. When Palden returned home during holidays, they went on secret dates. This continued for four years, until Palden graduated. While at school, he had become more sophisticated. Many girls had chased him during the four years, but Palden rejected them all. Meanwhile, several families proposed marriage to Drolma, but she rejected them.

Her father said, "I don't know what the hell you're thinking! Who do you want to marry?"

Drolma's only replied with a smile.

After Palden returned home, he found a good job in the county town. He decided to propose marriage to Drolma's parents. He worried they would disagree, because the

feud between the two families had never really finished. Drolma and Palden still met secretly when he returned to the village on weekends. However, no secret can be kept forever. Eventually their families learned about their relationship.

"Son, do you really like Drolma, or are you just playing?" said Palden's father.

"Father, I really love Drolma. I want her to be my wife," said Palden.

"Are you crazy? We are enemies! How could you?" cried his mother.

"Please don't think that way, Mother. That was several years ago. Let's get over it!" Palden said.

"My poor little son, do you think Drolma's father will agree?" asked Palden's mother.

"I'm not sure. I hope he will," Palden said. Soon after, he sent a messenger to propose marriage to Drolma's family.

Drolma's father was furious when he heard this. How could his daughter love his enemy's son? He was sure they would mistreat her if she married Palden. Palden was an official with a good job and a good salary. He could marry anyone, so why did he choose Drolma? Drolma's father refused Palden's proposal. "Tell him to never speak to my daughter again!" he yelled at the messenger.

Nonetheless, the two lovers continued meeting. Even though their families hated each other, the couple led a happy, secret life. They both believed the feud would eventually end. They both believed their families would eventually agree to the marriage. They were wrong. The marriage never happened. Life is unpredictable. Bad luck crept up on the couple slowly and quietly. They were deep in love and happily ignorant.

...

The summer afternoon sun beat down harshly. Everyone felt they were being boiled in a pot. Everyone complained that the sun was destroying the crops. However, people's words were useless. The situation would only change when clouds gathered. Gradually, people complained less.

Drolma's brothers, Rinchen and Losang, were drunk. They had been drinking beer all afternoon. They were sitting with some villagers near the corner of a small store. One villager pointed into the distance and said, "Who the hell are those two?" The couple wasn't far away. They quickly realized it was Palden and Drolma.

"Hey Rinchen, is your sister going to marry him?" said one villager.

"Impossible! I'm her brother. Our family and his family are enemies," Rinchen said angrily.

Rinchen thought about his time in prison. He and his brothers had suffered terribly. One afternoon, a terrible thing had happened. A group of ten prisoners told Rinchen to wash their boss's feet. Rinchen refused. His father and brothers stood by him. Those ten men beat them terribly. Then, they had to wash the boss's feet. The worst thing was, they had to drink the dirty water afterwards. That terrible memory polluted Rinchen's life like a shadow.

Suddenly, Rinchen stood up, pulling his dagger from his belt.

Drolma and Palden did not even notice him coming. When Palden felt the dagger in his gut, it was too late.

Rinchen took Palden from Drolma. He stabbed his dagger into Palden's gut again and again and again. Drolma was shocked. She couldn't move. When she saw blood flowing from Palden's body, she roared like a dragon.

Rinchen fled.

We came when we heard her cry, but there was nothing we could do. Drolma and Palden's parents arrived soon after me. Palden's mother saw her son lying on the ground. His body was covered in blood. She screamed in agony. Palden's father stood silently. He did not cry. He wanted to cry, but he was thinking deeply. His heart was bleeding.

Drolma's parents worried about Rinchen. They knew he would be executed. That was the law. There was no escape.

Palden's parents lost their only son because of a feud. Drolma lost her lover because of stolen water. Soon she would lose her brother. Because of a simple feud, two families lost sons, and gained nothing but sadness and regret.

A month after Palden's death, Rinchen was arrested. He was executed soon after. Palden's parents never stopped grieving. The wrinkles on their face deepened.

Drolma went to a nunnery.

Now, looking back, exactly who is to blame?

# VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Spell the words correctly.

aemahsd	_____	misatert	_____
badatrs	_____	ogunitog	_____
cyarz	_____	nnnueyr	_____
isinorpm	_____	sodietacitshp	_____
iragiret	_____	souliton	_____

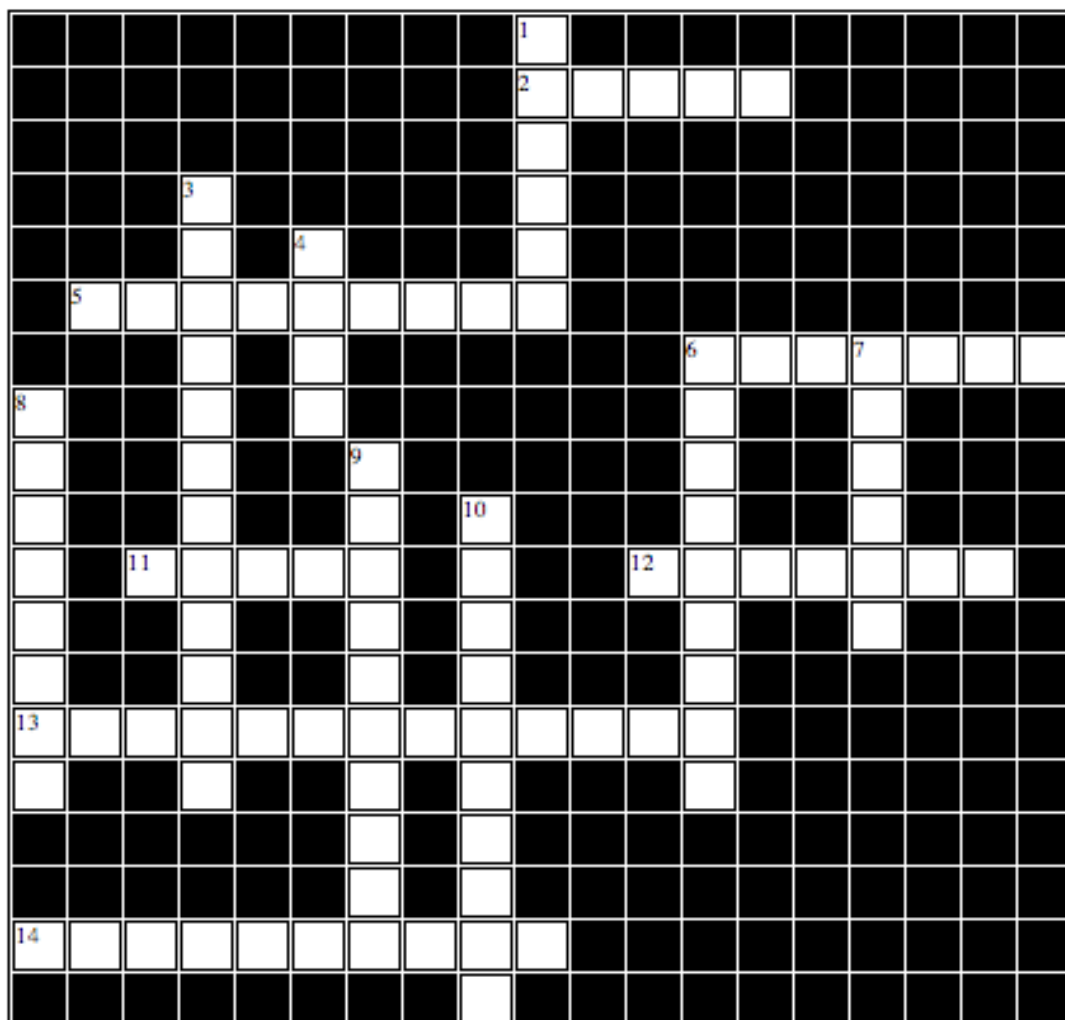
Match the word to its meaning.

- |                   |                                   |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. snack          | _____ money for your job          |
| 2. salary         | _____ complex, cultured, educated |
| 3. playground     | _____ a small meal                |
| 4. meter          | _____ very angry                  |
| 5. ladder         | _____ your cheeks become red      |
| 6. holidays       | _____ a place where children play |
| 7. furious        | _____ ran away, escaped           |
| 8. fled           | _____ a measure of distance       |
| 9. blush          | _____ something you climb         |
| 10. sophisticated | _____ a time to relax             |

Fill the gaps.

ashamed, belt, crept, embarrassing, forgiveness, gun, irrigate, kindhearted, magic, mistreat, outgoing, salary, sentence, sincerely, unpredictable, snack, complain, humorous, imprison, hindquarters

1. It was unfair when he received a harsh \_\_\_\_\_ for his small crime.
2. My neighbors are very \_\_\_\_\_ and always help other families.
3. Don't give him a gun! He's too \_\_\_\_\_. We can't trust him.
4. My uncle is a very \_\_\_\_\_ guy, so everybody likes him.
5. "I've come to ask for \_\_\_\_\_ because I know I was wrong."
6. Don't \_\_\_\_\_ about the food. When I was a child often had nothing to eat.
7. Those pants are too big for you unless you wear a \_\_\_\_\_.
8. He was late, so he quietly \_\_\_\_\_ into the classroom.
9. We are still discussing the \_\_\_\_\_, but I think I've got the job.
10. He thought his new haircut was \_\_\_\_\_ but the other students loved it.



### Across

2. Much pain.
5. Really. Truly. Honestly.
6. Terrible animal. Ghost. Devil.
11. You use it to sweep.
12. You want what others have.
13. Cannot be predicted. Changeable.
14. Water for crops.

### Down

1. Make peaceful.
3. The back legs of an animal.
4. A long fight between two families.
6. Someone who takes a message.
7. Older.
8. Funny.
9. Say something nice about someone.
10. What other people say about you.

GRAMMAR EXERCISES
-------------------

Fill the gaps with pronouns.

He knew \_\_\_\_\_ loved him. \_\_\_\_\_ felt lucky. \_\_\_\_\_ shared their feelings and, with a laugh, became lovers that night. \_\_\_\_\_ did not tell their families. As time passed, \_\_\_\_\_ helped each other in school. \_\_\_\_\_ helped each other prepare for the college entrance examination. \_\_\_\_\_ were both excited, believing that they had a good chance of passing.

Unfortunately, Drolma's score was low. Palden, however, was accepted into a good school. Drolma wanted to take the examination a year later, but \_\_\_\_\_ father ordered \_\_\_\_\_ to come home.

Write capital letters, commas, and full stops.

i was watching my favorite tv show at home that afternoon i felt relaxed then just after a snack i heard a wild cry from outside terror rose in my heart i had never heard such a wild cry i had heard babies crying for their mothers i had heard children crying because they had been beaten but i had never heard such a wild cry my heart began pounding my breathing seemed to stop i listened waiting for more nothing happened gradually i became normal again however i kept thinking that something terrible had happened i stood slowly then i heard the cry again my fear returned with new intensity i climbed up the ladder to the roof of our house i saw many people surrounding someone i was too far away to see clearly so i climbed down from the roof and ran to the crowd

Fill the gaps with: would, should, could.

They knew he \_\_\_\_\_ be executed.  
Father, what \_\_\_\_\_ we do next month in court?  
Soon she \_\_\_\_\_ lose her brother.  
He \_\_\_\_\_ not believe it.  
If the feud was serious, Palden's family \_\_\_\_\_ be helpless.  
He was sure they \_\_\_\_\_ mistreat her if she married Palden.  
How \_\_\_\_\_ his daughter love his enemy's son?  
I think we \_\_\_\_\_ ask our families to stop fighting  
The situation \_\_\_\_\_ only change when clouds gathered.  
If the villagers hadn't rescued Father, they \_\_\_\_\_ have killed him.  
They had no relatives in the village who \_\_\_\_\_ help them.  
We came when we heard her cry, but there was nothing we \_\_\_\_\_ do.

Choose the correct verb form.

Palden's sister (continue/continued), still (cried/cry/crying), "Drolma's father and three brothers (beat/beating) our father. Fortunately, villagers had (stopped/stop) them. If the villagers hadn't (rescued/rescue) Father, they would have (kill/killed) him. Our mother is (cared/caring/care) for Father at home." As he (listened/listen), Palden (wish/wished) he could (took/take) revenge. However, he (realized/realize) it was impossible for him to (fight/fighting/fought) four big men unless he (has/had/have) a gun or could (studying/study) black magic like Milarepa. Palden didn't (had/have/has) a gun, nor did he (know/knew) black magic, so there (is/was) nothing he could do.

Fill the gaps with: nor, because, so, and, but.

Drolma lost her lover \_\_\_\_\_ of stolen water.  
Drolma was neither a great student \_\_\_\_\_ a bad student.  
He could marry anyone, \_\_\_\_\_ why did he choose Drolma?  
Her lover had died, \_\_\_\_\_ she did not want to continue alone.  
I had heard children crying \_\_\_\_\_ they had been beaten.  
I know I was wrong, \_\_\_\_\_ I brought these things for your husband  
I know it's shameful, \_\_\_\_\_ it's the only chance we have.  
Palden didn't have a gun, \_\_\_\_\_ did he know black magic.  
Palden liked Drolma \_\_\_\_\_ had not been brave enough to tell her.  
Palden's parents lost their only son \_\_\_\_\_ of a feud.  
People tried to console her, \_\_\_\_\_ she ignored them.  
She saw everything he was carrying, \_\_\_\_\_ guessed what he was doing.  
She wanted to fix the situation, \_\_\_\_\_ she called her brother.  
She was beautiful, so many girls were jealous of her, \_\_\_\_\_ many boys chased her.  
She was worried \_\_\_\_\_ she thought Palden was her enemy.  
So, I climbed down from the roof \_\_\_\_\_ ran to the crowd.  
The feud started \_\_\_\_\_ of irrigation water.  
They were afraid of the police, \_\_\_\_\_ they were terrified of prison.

QUESTIONS ABOUT THE TEXT
--------------------------

Comprehension Questions

1. What was the cry that the author heard?
2. What did the author see from his roof?
3. Who was crying?
4. What is a feud? Why were Palden and Drolma's families feuding?
5. Describe Palden, what was he like?
6. What was Drolma like?
7. Why was Palden worried about his family?
8. Why does Drolma's family decide to apologize to Palden's family?
9. What happened when Drolma's father went to Palden's house?
10. How was Drolma's family punished?
11. Did Palden and Drolma tell their families that they were dating?
12. Were Drolma and Palden's test scores high or low?
13. Did Drolma go to a good college?
14. How did Drolma and Palden date during college?
15. Did Drolma's father accept Palden's marriage proposal?
16. What did Drolma's father say to Palden?
17. Who were the couple that Losang and Rinchen saw?
18. What did Losang and Rinchen remember from being in prison?
19. How did Rinchen kill Palden?
20. Where did Drolma go?

Discussion Questions

1. *Palden's parents lost their only son because of a feud. Drolma lost her lover because of stolen water. Soon she would lose her brother. Because of a simple feud, two families lost sons, and gained nothing but sadness and regret.* Do you think that the deaths of Palden and Rinchen ended the feud? Did the families deserve this punishment?
2. What does it mean to lose a son? How would you feel if your son was killed?
3. If you were Drolma or Palden, would you disobey your family or stay together?
4. Which is more important, your family or your lover?
5. Who is to blame?

True or False?

1. Palden was twenty-three when he died.
2. The feud started when Palden and Drolma were in college.
3. Palden's father was beaten by Drolma's father and brothers.
4. Drolma's father apologized successfully to Palden's family.
5. Drolma asked Palden to be her boyfriend.
6. Drolma tested into a good college.
7. Palden married a girl that he met in college.
8. Losang killed Palden.
9. Rinchen stayed near Palden's body after he killed him.
10. Rinchen was executed.



WRITING
---------

What was it like in prison? How did it look, sound, smell? Write a detailed description. What exactly happened to Drolma's brothers and fathers in prison? Write the story in detail.

# UNIT THIRTEEN

## A SINGER'S DREAM

by Nyima Tsering

# PREPARATORY EXERCISES

Study this vocabulary before you read the text.

adult དར་མ། 成人

area ས་ཁུལ། 地区

blooming བཞད་པ། 正开花的

booklet ལག་དེབ། དེབ་ཆུང་། 小册子

boom བཞད། 开花

boulder ཕ་བོང་མ། 巨石

braid སྒྲ་ལྷས་མ། 辫子

chin མ་ནེ། 下巴

chunk རྩལ་པ། 大块

conch དུང་། 海螺

congratulations རྟོན་འབྲེལ་བྱ། 祝贺

console བཅས་གསོ། 安慰

crevice བེར་ཁ། 裂缝

folk དམངས་ཁྲོད། 民间的

ice ཆབ་རྩམ། 冰

legs རྒྱུ་བ། 腿子

loneliness ཁེར་རྒྱུང་། ལུན་སྒྲུང་། 寂寞，孤独

longingly རེ་སྤྲུག་ངང་། 渴望地

melodious ལྷན་འཛེབས་ལྡན་པའི། 旋律美妙的

noise ལྷ་སྒྲུབ། 喧闹声

obsession བཅས་ནད། 困扰

ornament རྒྱན་ཆ། 装饰

photograph འདྲ་པར། 照片

robe pouch རུམ། 长袍口袋

pounding རྩང་། 跳

predict རྟོན་དཔག། 预测

rage རོང་ཁོ་ལངས། 愤怒

rainbow འཇའ་ཚོན། 彩虹

riverbank རྩ་འགམ། 河崖

scent རྩ་ཞིམ། 香味

searching འཚོལ། 寻找

shabby ལྷལ་ལྷལ། 破旧的

shut བཞུག། 关闭

somewhat རུང་ཙམ། 一些

spare ཁོ་སྤྲུལ། 多余的

thunder འབྲུག་སྒྲ། 打雷

treasure རིན་པོ་ཆེ། 珍藏

unbearable གཞོད་མི་བྱེད་པ། 无法忍受的

vividly གསོན་ཉམས་ལྡན་པ། 生动地

Discuss the questions.

Do you know any traditional Tibetan songs?

Have you ever met a wandering singer?

What do you usually dream about?

Have you ever been obsessed with something?

Do you know any stories from the Gesar Epic?

Tsering was a wandering singer. Searching for his dream, he walked and walked.

One night when he was eight, Tsering had a dream. A beautiful girl appeared in the dream. At that time, he was already somewhat famous, and he already knew how to read and write. Tsering told his father about the dream when he woke up. "Last night, a beautiful girl appeared in my dream. I'd never seen her before, but she appeared vividly before my eyes. I think she was my age. Her face was round, and she had two dimples in her cheeks. She had a black mole on her chin. It looked very nice. She had many shiny black braids hanging down her back. We played chase together. She told me to chase her, and I did. But, even though I tried my best, I couldn't catch her. After a little while, we rested. Then we played again. For a long time we played, and then rested, played and rested, then she left. She seemed familiar to me. It seemed like we had often played together, yet I didn't know her name. Where did she come from? I can't forget her."

"She was bigger than you, right?" Father asked.

"No, we were the same age."

"OK, when you grow up, you'll find that girl and marry her. She'll become your beautiful bride," Father said, smiling kindly. When Tsering heard his father say this, he did not understand it clearly. Nonetheless, he smiled and felt happy.

At that time, nobody knew. Nobody could predict it. Tsering's dream became his obsession. It became the only meaningful thing in his life.

...

Dusk was coming. The infinite grassland became darker and darker. Dusk that day was like the dusk of many days before. It was several years after his dream. Now, his sweet dream and old guitar were his only companions. He had wandered across the snow-land for many years now. He was searching for his dream girl. Every day he grew older. Sometimes he felt very tired, and didn't want to continue walking. Sometimes he wanted to give up, but then he thought about his dream girl. Thoughts of his dream girl gave him new energy.

In his dreams, they didn't play chase any more. Like him, the girl had grown older. Now, each time he dreamed about her, he wrote everything down in an old notebook when he woke up. Whenever he had spare time, he opened the notebook to read his precious dreams. He memorized those dreams and then, whenever he walked, he remembered them.

*Last night, she appeared in my dream again. She was more beautiful than before. Words cannot express her beauty. She looks like a goddess. She still has beautiful dimples, and she still has that beautiful black mole on her chin. In my dream, she looked at me longingly. Her round eyes were full of yearning. Countless words and hopes were in those eyes. Staring at me, she moved her red lips somewhat. She was trying to tell me something, but no sound came from her mouth. We have never spoken. I still don't know her name. The two of us stood there in silence, staring at each other. Time seemed infinite when we looked at each other.*

Recalling his dream, Tsering felt exhausted. He thought, "I need to stop and rest." He stopped. He put the old guitar on the dirty ground. He sat and faced west, gazing into the distance. The sun was setting. A few sunrays danced in the sky. A nameless river flowed in front of him. It looked quiet and peaceful, but beneath the surface, the water raged. Singer Tsering had met this nameless river one month ago. Then he followed the riverbank through the grassland. Now, spring was coming, and everything around Tsering was becoming green. However, chunks of ice were still in the river. When the sunrays shone on the chunks of ice, tiny rainbows danced

in the air. Gazing at the beautiful scene, Tsering suddenly became cold.

Tsering picked up his shabby guitar, stood up, and walked to the river. When he arrived at the riverbank, he suddenly felt hungry. He sat on the cold ground and took out a small piece of dry *tsampa* from his robe. He had begged this *tsampa* from some nomads. He put a piece of the *tsampa* in his mouth, and then added a small chunk of ice from the river. As he slowly chewed, he thought about his dream again. Deep in thought, he gazed at the river without moving. Then, after a moment, he picked up his old guitar. Then, he began to sing a gloomy song.

*Dream girl,  
Why don't you come?  
Have you heard me calling?  
For you,  
I am walking through the snow-land.  
Dream girl,  
Where are you?  
Where are you?*

He had written that song when he was eight years old. He loved to sing it everywhere in the snow-land. He sang it in countless farmers' villages, and everywhere on the nomads' infinite grasslands. Everywhere he went, he shared this beautiful, gloomy song. Many people cried when they heard it.

Now, his song flew to the other side of the river. Some birds there were disturbed and flew away. Tsering put down his guitar. He wrapped his shabby robe around him, and looked at the river.

...

Tsering's father had given him the guitar. Tsering's father had been a famous singer. He sang the Gesar Epic very well. He also knew countless songs from many Tibetan areas. Everybody in the snow-land knew Tsering's father's name.

Tsering's grandfather had given the guitar to his father. Tsering's grandfather had also been a famous singer. However, he had died when Tsering's father was very young. As Tsering's grandfather was dying, he said, "This guitar was made from sandalwood long ago. It is a precious treasure. People have died to protect it. Please take care of it. Don't lose it. This guitar will help you in the future..."

At that time, Tsering's father already knew how to play the guitar. However, he had never used a sandalwood guitar before. His father had never let him touch it. Without waiting, he picked up the sandalwood guitar and played it. Melodious sounds came from the old guitar. After Tsering's grandfather died, his father left home and began to wander and sing.

When Tsering's father was in his thirties, he came to the grasslands of Kham. It was summer and beautiful flowers were blooming. It was very lovely, so he stayed there a long time. His beautiful songs and sweet voice always pleased the nomads. One day a beautiful young woman fell in love with him. She was Tsering's mother. When Tsering's father left, she followed him. Later, she gave birth to Tsering, while she and Tsering's father were wandering through the snow-land. Sadly, she died while giving birth. After that, Tsering and his father went everywhere together. They loved each other deeply and took care of each other.

Tsering never had a hometown. All of the snow-land was his home. When people asked him where he was from, he said, "I'm from the snow-land."

...

Sitting by the river, Tsering took out his shabby notebook and began reading. He read it carefully. There were many stories about his dreams. He read until it was too dark to read. Then, he put the notebook in his robe, next to his heart. He gazed in front of him. His hand gently touched the guitar and he thought about his dream again.

The girl was now an adult. Tsering yearned to meet her. She appeared in his dreams more often than before, but this only made him suffer. After every dream, his yearning became stronger. It was too dark to read, so Tsering remembered another dream.

*She's become adult and is decorated with many ornaments. She is no longer shy. She has really become a goddess – beautiful and confident. Her body has a mysterious scent. She gazes at me with her shining black eyes, without turning away. I can see the fire of love in her eyes. But, I also see loneliness and yearning. Her body excites me, and I know she is also excited. After a long silence, we begin walking towards each other. Neither of us says anything. Finally we are standing close. Our noses are almost touching. We don't move our hands – we just gaze into each other's eyes. Then, after an unbearable moment, we lean towards each other, ready to kiss. But before we can kiss, there is a loud sound like thunder. The ground opens up between us. A huge crevice appears in the earth. Smoke comes out of the crevice and wafts into the air. The crevice grows wider and wider. We look at each other hopelessly. We want to call out, but no sound comes from our mouths.*

Tsering could no longer see the river. He could only hear it, flowing into the infinite distance. Every now and then chunks of ice struck each other. They sounded like ringing bells.

Tsering stood up and looked for a warm place to sleep. Eventually, he found a place behind a boulder. He put down his guitar and took off his shabby robe. Then, he pulled the robe over his body like a blanket, and tried to sleep. Slowly, sleep came.

...

Tsering's father wanted his son to be a famous singer and a master of the guitar. Tsering learned from his father very quickly. This made his father very happy, but nonetheless he often said, "Tsering my son, although you have a good voice, there is still something missing. You are a good singer, but you're not a great singer."

Eventually, Tsering turned seventeen. Late one evening while he practiced, Tsering fell asleep. He heard melodious music. Then a gray-haired old man appeared. He kindly said, "Boy, open your mouth."

"Why? Who are you?" Tsering asked.

"Just open your mouth. I have something for you."

"No, you should tell me who you are," Tsering said.

"It's unnecessary, just do as I tell you."

"Well, at least tell me where you are from."

"I come from the sky."

Tsering said nothing. He realized that the old man was from Heaven. Tsering opened his mouth. With long, thin fingers, the old man put a small white conch into Tsering's mouth. "Swallow it," said the gray-haired man. Tsering swallowed.

"Boy, from now on, you will be the greatest singer in the snow-land. Use your voice to sing everywhere in the snow-land." Then the gray-haired old man flew away on a colored cloud.

When Tsering woke up the next morning, the sun was already shining. He suddenly

remembered his dream. He felt strange, and got up very quickly. He sat on the ground and murmured scriptures. As he chanted, he could feel that something was different. Something had changed, but he didn't know what.

After chanting, he began singing an old folk song. He noticed that his voice was sweeter than before. It was now just like spring water flowing. He realized this was a gift from the gods. He excitedly jumped about. Then, he sat down, breathed deeply, and sang another old folk song.

The sounds attracted his father, who came into the room and said, "Where did that sound come from?"

"My mouth," Tsering said, smiling.

"It's really amazing," Father said.

"Father, you like it, don't you?" Tsering asked.

"Of course. Don't you like it?" his father said.

Tsering said nothing. He simply picked up his guitar and sang the folk song again. His father was truly amazed. He opened his mouth but didn't say anything. He just looked at Tsering carefully. Then, Tsering told his father about the gray-haired old man. Tsering's father said, "Congratulations, now you are truly a great singer."

Tsering felt a deep sense of peace, and murmured, "Thank you, gods."

That same year, Tsering's father passed away. Tsering was alone.

...

After Tsering fell asleep, she came to him again.

*She was running towards me very quickly. She seemed frightened. Her hair was not braided. It was wild and messy. A few steps away from me, she stopped. Her lips moved, trying to say something. As usual, no sound came out. I began to move towards her. I wanted to ask her what the problem was. I wanted to console her. As I came closer, she turned her head around, looking worriedly into the distance. We reached out our hands, trying to touch each other, but somehow we could not. Hopelessly, we froze, like two lovers in a photograph. Suddenly, a loud noise boomed above our heads. A huge wave fell on us. The girl was knocked over and carried away by the water. Somehow, I stayed. I opened my mouth to call, but no sound came out. I wanted to run after her, but my legs wouldn't move. The water laughed cruelly as it carried my dream girl away.*

Tsering suddenly woke up. He felt exhausted and could not move. He was wet with sweat. He was pale and colorless.

He sat still for a long time. When his heart became calm, he took out his booklet and began writing.

...

When Tsering's father was dying, he told Tsering, "Boy, don't trust your dream. Don't search for her. She isn't real." Tsering listened, but said nothing. He quietly looked at his father. Their eyes met. A minute later, Tsering's father shut his eyes forever. Did his father know if the dream was true or not? He was a wise man who knew many things. Maybe what he said was true.

...

Tsering carried his old guitar and continued. He walked by the same nameless river. Today, the river was polluted by pieces of dirt and grass that stuck to the chunks of ice. After walking all day by the river, Tsering saw a village. For the first time in several days, Tsering could speak with people and sleep by a warm fire.

He decided to stay in the village several days. He decided to sing for the people there. He would sing his own songs, or Gesar's Epic. Usually villagers liked his songs, and treated him very kindly. They usually gave him food, clothes, and other helpful things.

The dirty nameless river flowed past that village. As he arrived, he saw a crowd of people beside the riverbank. They were murmuring quietly. Tsering walked towards them. One of the men noticed him, and looked at him strangely. Tsering stopped, and asked politely, "Excuse me, what are you looking at?"

"We're looking at a dead woman. We pulled her out of the river," the man answered.

"What does she look like?" Tsering asked, his heart pounding.

"She's dead, but she looks alive. She looks like she's sleeping. She has dimples in her cheeks, and a black mole on her chin. Her body has a mysterious scent..."

Singer Tsering didn't know what to do. He murmured to himself. "Can it be? Is this her?" Falling to his knees, Tsering cried out. The crowd turned around and looked at him.

Dusk passed and night fell. Tsering left the small village and walked into the dark along the riverbank. Hidden by night's veil, he sat down on the banks, and reached into his robe pouch. He put his hand next to his heart, and grabbed his small notebook. He took the notebook out and touched it carefully. Then, with a deep sigh, he began tearing pages from the book one by one. He threw each page into the nameless river. Sadly, he sang:

*Dream girl  
Why didn't you come?  
Did you hear my call?  
For you  
I have walked through the snow-land  
Dream girl  
You're gone  
You're gone*

Tsering cried and cried, and the nameless river flowed on.



# VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Match the word with its meaning.

- |               |       |  |
|---------------|-------|--|
| 1. adult      | _____ | tell what will happen in the future      |
| 2. boulder    | _____ | not a child or a baby                    |
| 3. ice        | _____ | feeling sad because you are alone        |
| 4. loneliness | _____ | something precious                       |
| 5. ornament   | _____ | a very big rock                          |
| 6. predict    | _____ | beside the river                         |
| 7. riverbank  | _____ | frozen water                             |
| 8. thunder    | _____ | a loud sound after lightning             |
| 9. treasure   | _____ | a decoration, for example, jewelry       |
| 10. console   | _____ | make someone feel better if they are sad |

Spell the words correctly.

- |                 |       |           |       |
|-----------------|-------|-----------|-------|
| cartgunitoanlso | _____ | raoniwb   | _____ |
| loylgnign       | _____ | pongidnu  | _____ |
| poahrphotg      | _____ | mlesiduoo | _____ |
| sowetmhea       | _____ | bkotole   | _____ |
| unalebareb      | _____ | circvee   | _____ |

Fill the gaps.

vividly, spare, shut, scent, robe pouch, obsession, longingly, legs, crevice, chin

- Yesterday I climbed a mountain and today my \_\_\_\_\_ are very sore.
- Can you please \_\_\_\_\_ the window, it's very cold in here.
- After he returned from Lhasa, he \_\_\_\_\_ described what he'd seen there.
- He always took some *tsampa* in his \_\_\_\_\_ when he went out herding.
- Everybody has an \_\_\_\_\_. Mine is music.
- One of my sheep fell into a \_\_\_\_\_ and died.
- The two lovers stared \_\_\_\_\_ at each other.
- Do you have a \_\_\_\_\_ pen – mine doesn't work.
- He put his hands on his \_\_\_\_\_ and looked at me.
- It was summer, and the grassland air was full of the \_\_\_\_\_ of flowers.

GRAMMAR EXERCISES
-------------------

Fill the gaps with conjunctions: and, or, so, yet, although, but.

He sat \_\_\_\_\_ faced west, gazing into the distance.

He sat on the cold ground \_\_\_\_\_ took out a small piece of dry *tsampa* from his robe.

He would sing his own songs, \_\_\_\_\_ Gesar's Epic.

I'd never seen her before, \_\_\_\_\_ she appeared vividly before my eyes.

It seemed like we had often played together, \_\_\_\_\_ I didn't know her name.

It was too dark to read, \_\_\_\_\_ Tsering remember another dream.

It was very lovely, \_\_\_\_\_ he stayed there a long time.

OK, when you grow up, you'll find that girl \_\_\_\_\_ marry her.

She told me to chase her, \_\_\_\_\_ I did.

Sometimes he wanted to give up, \_\_\_\_\_ then he thought about his dream girl.

Tsering my son, \_\_\_\_\_ you have a good voice, there is still something missing.

We want to call out, \_\_\_\_\_ no sound comes from our mouths.

You are a good singer, \_\_\_\_\_ you're not a great singer

Choose the correct verb form.

She was (run/running) towards me very quickly. She (seemed/seem) frightened. Her hair was not braided. It (is/was) wild and messy. A few steps away from me, she (stop/stopped). Her lips (move/moved), trying to (say/said) something. As usual, no sound (come/came) out. I began to (move/moved) towards her. I (want/wanted) to (ask/asked) her what the problem was. I (want/wanted) to (console/consolated) her. As I (come/came) closer, she (turn/turned) her head around, (looked/looking) worriedly into the distance. We (reaching/reached) out our hands, trying to (touch/touched) each other, but somehow we could not. Hopelessly, we (freezing/froze), like two lovers in a photograph. Suddenly, a loud noise (boom/boomed) above our heads. A huge wave (falling/fell) on us. The girl was knocked over and (carry/carried) away by the water. Somehow, I (stay/stayed). I (open/opened) my mouth to call, but no sound (come/came) out. I (want/wanted) to run after her, but my legs wouldn't move. The water (laughed/laughing) cruelly as it (carrying/carried) my dream girl away.

Fill the gaps with pronouns.

When Tsering's father was in \_\_\_\_\_ thirties, \_\_\_\_\_ came to the grasslands of Kham. \_\_\_\_\_ was summer and beautiful flowers were blooming. \_\_\_\_\_ was very lovely, so \_\_\_\_\_ stayed there a long time. \_\_\_\_\_ beautiful songs and sweet voice always pleased the nomads. One day a beautiful young woman fell in love with \_\_\_\_\_. \_\_\_\_\_ was Tsering's mother. When Tsering's father left, \_\_\_\_\_ followed him. Later, \_\_\_\_\_ gave birth to Tsering, while \_\_\_\_\_ and Tsering's father were wandering through the snow-land. Sadly, \_\_\_\_\_ died while giving birth. After that, Tsering and \_\_\_\_\_ father went everywhere together. \_\_\_\_\_ loved each other deeply and took care of each other.

Fill the gaps with: to, up, about, in, at, out, from

Tsering picked \_\_\_\_\_ his shabby guitar, stood \_\_\_\_\_, and walked \_\_\_\_\_ the river. When he arrived \_\_\_\_\_ the riverbank, he suddenly felt hungry. He sat \_\_\_\_\_ the cold ground and took \_\_\_\_\_ a small piece of dry *tsampa* \_\_\_\_\_ his robe. He had begged this *tsampa* \_\_\_\_\_ some nomads. He put a piece of the *tsampa* \_\_\_\_\_ his mouth, and then added a small chunk of ice \_\_\_\_\_ the river. As he slowly chewed, he thought \_\_\_\_\_ his dream again. Deep \_\_\_\_\_ thought, he gazed \_\_\_\_\_ the river without moving. Then, after a moment, he picked \_\_\_\_\_ his old guitar. Then, he began \_\_\_\_\_ sing a gloomy song.

Fill the gaps with has, have, had.

However, he \_\_\_\_\_ never used a sandalwood guitar before.

Like him, the girl \_\_\_\_\_ grown older.

One night when he was in eight, Tsering \_\_\_\_\_ a dream.

She \_\_\_\_\_ really become a goddess – beautiful and confident.

Singer Tsering \_\_\_\_\_ met this nameless river one month ago.

Tsering my son, although you \_\_\_\_\_ a good voice, there is still something missing.

Tsering never \_\_\_\_\_ a hometown.

Tsering's father \_\_\_\_\_ given him the guitar.

Tsering's father \_\_\_\_\_ been a famous singer.

We \_\_\_\_\_ never spoken.

Whenever he \_\_\_\_\_ spare time, he opened the notebook to read his precious dreams.

QUESTIONS ABOUT THE TEXT
--------------------------

Comprehension Questions

1. What was Tsering's job?
2. Where was Tsering's hometown?
3. When Tsering first told his dream to his father, what did his Father say?
4. What did Tsering write in his notebook?
5. Talk about Tsering's guitar?
6. Who was the old man in Tsering's dream?
7. How did Tsering's dreams change over time?
8. Who was Tsering's mother?
9. Who is King Gesar?
10. What did Tsering dream about when he was seventeen?
11. What did Tsering's father tell him before he died?
12. What were the people in the village looking at?
13. Why did Tsering throw the notebook pages into the river?
14. What was Tsering searching for when he wandered through the snowland?
15. How did Tsering's singing change after he dreamed of the old man?

Discussion Questions

1. Do you think Tsering was right to look for his dream girl?
2. Do you think people like Tsering really existed in the past?
3. What do you think Tsering will do next?

True or False?

1. Tsering's guitar is made of shabby.
2. Tsering's father was a gray-haired old man.
3. Tsering married his dream girl.
4. Tsering's guitar was a precious treasure.
5. Tsering could read and write when he was young.
6. Tsering's mother was a famous singer.
7. Tsering lived in a big, comfortable house.
8. People appreciated Tsering's singing.
9. Tsering wrote his hopes in the notebook.
10. When Tsering sat by the river, it was summer.

WRITING

Rewrite this story from the girl's perspective.

# UNIT FOURTEEN

## A BLACK YAK GROWS UP

by Cheetanjia

## PREPARATORY EXERCISES

Study this vocabulary before you read the text.

afterbirth ཤ་མ། 胞衣	offspring མི་རབས་རྗེས་མ། 子孙, 后代
beast གཅན་གནན། 野兽	opposite ཁ་གཏད་པའི། 对面的
calf/calves རེལ། 小牛	peak རི་ཆེ། 山峰
chest ཐང་ཁ། 胸部	playmate རྟོན་གྲུག་པ། 玩伴
curious ཡ་མཚན་ཅན། 好奇的	probably བལ་ཆེན། 或许
daytime ཉིན་དཀར། 白天	repeatedly ཡང་ནས་ཡང་དུ། 反复地
edge མཐའ། 边缘	rudeness རྩོམ་སྤྱད། 粗鲁
flesh ལུས། ཤ་ཁྲག་གི་ཕུང་བ། 肉体	saddle ཏྲ་མ། 鞍
footsteps སྒྲུ་བ། 脚步	scared རྒྱུག་པ། 使害怕
fragrance/fragrant རྫི་བཟང་། 香味	slaughter བཤའ་བ། 屠杀
jeans ཐང་རྩི་དྲོ་མ། 牛仔裤	sniff ལྷུ་མ་བ། 嗅, 闻
memorable བརྗེད་དུ་མི་ཐུང་བ། 值得纪念的	stupid རྩོན་པའི། 愚蠢的
mixed འདྲེས་མ། 混合	sunrise རྒྱ་རེངས། 日出
mystery རྟག་ཐུང། 神秘	transportation རྒྱལ་འདྲེན། 运输
needle ཁབ། 针	unkind རྩོང་རྩི་མེད་པའི། 无情的

Discuss these questions.

- Do animals have thoughts and feelings like people?
- What things are difficult in a yak's life?
- What things are fun in a yak's life?
- If you could be any animal, which animal would you like to be?

## WRITING

What difficulties do yaks face each day? What difficulties do they face in each season?

I came to this earth without any problems. I was covered in afterbirth. I couldn't open my eyes. My dear mother licked my body with her tongue. The cold, wet ground under me was very uncomfortable.

My mother's warm tongue made me feel very happy. Slowly my wet body became dry. When I opened my eyes, I saw something very beautiful. I saw tall mountains and grassland. The mountains' snowy peaks seemed to hide in the clouds. A green forest covered the mountains. A clear, sparkling stream flowed from the foot of the mountain. Many fragrant flowers grew everywhere, making the environment very beautiful. This was a good place to be born.

More than one hundred yaks made a circle around mother and me. Most of them looked happy, and came to say, "Congratulations, you have a baby." An older female emerged from the circle. She was thin and tall, and came slowly towards us. She licked my head carefully and whispered something in my mother's ear. I didn't know what she said. She probably told my mother how to protect me, because I was Mother's first baby, and Mother had no experience in looking after me. After a few minutes, the thin old female yak left us and disappeared into the herd.

I saw many small calves playing near us. I felt joyful when I saw them, and wanted to make friends with them. I tried to stand, but I could not. I tried to move, but it was too difficult. My desire to stand became stronger. I stretched my legs in front of me and started to get up. At first, it was very difficult. My whole body was shaking. Several times, I fell down on the ground immediately. Mother looked at me and smiled, but didn't say anything. Mother's smile was encouraging and I continued to try. I promised myself I would never fall down again. Using all my power, I slowly rose. I could stand! I was very glad and looked at Mother's face. When she saw her new baby calf standing, she proudly raised her head.

...

The sun was setting behind the western mountains. The light crept to the edge of the sky as the mountain's shadow slowly moved over the valley. Suddenly, a short, fat old woman appeared. She wore a brown Tibetan robe. A blue scarf covered her head. Her long sleeves touched the ground. A young woman and a small boy were behind the old woman. The young woman wore a black Tibetan robe, but no scarf. Her sleeves were tied around her waist, and she was walking as quickly as the winter wind. Her red cheeks were as red as apples. The boy was wearing jeans and a t-shirt. He walked slowly behind them. He looked unhappy. He held a long stick in his hand. It seemed he might beat a yak. They moved closer to us, and the young woman saw us first.

"Mother! Our good female yak has given birth!" she cried out. The old woman and small boy came quickly. They looked at me, and I saw in their faces the kindness in their hearts.

The young woman sat by me and said, "What a wonderful young calf!" and patted my head. This made Mother angry. She made an angry gesture with her head, showing her sharp horns to the young woman. The young woman was afraid and ran away. Then, these people tied each yak on a rope. When they finished, it was already dusk. Fortunately, they didn't come again and make Mother angry. They closed the gate of the livestock yard and went inside their warm tent.

Night came. The moon appeared and shone in the dark sky, and small stars appeared one after another around the moon. The weather was warm. Most females were lying down, sleeping. They were sleeping deeply, but Mother did not lie down. Although she didn't say anything, I knew Mother was protecting me. I went to sleep quickly.

When I awoke it was already daytime. This was my second day. I could stand and walk slowly. The hot sun gradually warmed the earth. The yaks awoke and looked into the distance. I



guess they were hungry. Mother sniffed beside me. Maybe she was hungry too.

After a while, the old woman, the young woman, and the boy came out of the tent. Then, they entered our yard. The old woman had a wooden bucket and a short rope. They were coming directly toward us. What did they want? The small boy came and helped me stand up. He helped me drink my mother's milk. Then, without warning, the old woman appeared beside us. The small boy suddenly pulled me away. Then, the old woman tied my mother's feet tightly together. Next, she sat by my mother. What I saw next amazed me. The woman took Mother's milk! Why was she stealing my breakfast? I was furious! Despite my feelings, the white milk continued splashing noisily into the bucket. After ten minutes, the old woman left. The young boy pulled me back to Mother, and I drank hungrily, but her milk was soon finished.

While I finished drinking, the young woman was collecting yak dung in the livestock yard. All the yaks looked happy, because they would soon be free. They looked at the young woman, hoping she would finish her work quickly. When the young woman finished, she began untying each yak. As soon as they were free, every yak ran excitedly onto the big grassland. The small boy took a stone and threw it towards the yak herd. He then shouted. All the yaks were shocked by his rudeness, and ran away.

...

Time passed quickly. Soon I had spent a month on earth. Everything was going perfectly. Warm milk seemed to flow endlessly from Mother. I grew bigger and bigger. My hair grew longer and my horns grew sharper. I had many playmates among the herd. They often wanted to fight with me, and even though I was stronger than them, I never fought. This made Mother proud. All the people in the tent also loved me. One morning, the people surrounded Mother and me. They talked for a long time. I didn't understand what they said.

"Mother, what did they say?" I asked.

"They praised you. They said that you are the best calf in our herd!" Mother answered proudly.

The next day they came again and gave me a beautiful name, Rokdang. This name means Black Yak With Sharp Horns. This name meant that I was strong and wild. Mother and I were really proud of my beautiful new name.

Mother told me about yaks' difficult lives. "You are male, unlike me. You will follow a difficult path in your life. You must be stronger than others. If you become the leader of our herd, everybody will obey and respect you. If you don't become the leader, you will suffer terribly," she said.

One day before sunrise, the people began taking down the tent. "Why would people destroy their own home?" I asked Mother. "What are they doing?"

"We are going to move to the top of the mountain. The weather and grass are good there in summer. It will be very comfortable for us to live there. In winter it is too cold to live at the top of the mountain, so we live here at the foot of the mountain," Mother explained.

The people took all their things and put them in big boxes. Then, the men caught some big male yaks. They put strange wooden things on their backs. "Mother, what did they put on the yaks?" I asked.

"It is called a saddle," she replied. Then they tied all the boxes to the saddles. The male yaks moved about and made strange faces.

I asked Mother, "What's happening?"

"There's no modern transportation, such as cars, in this place. So herders use yaks as transportation. They put everything on yaks' back, even their children. Male yaks often suffer

from this work," Mother answered sadly.

Then we started to move. Some male yaks led the herd up the mountain. Mother and I went in the middle of the herd. The people followed us. Some of them rode horses, but most of them walked. The boy repeatedly threw stones at us. After a while, we arrived by a deep, wide river. I asked Mother, "What should we do next?"

She said, "Be brave. Don't worry. If you cross the river, you will be a real yak." That was the first dangerous thing I ever faced. I was scared, but I didn't say anything. Mother crossed the river, and then looked back at me. Her eyes encouraged me. I slowly walked into the water. The water danced around me, pushing and pulling my body. Whenever I put my feet on the ground, the rocks moved away. Sometimes, my head went under the water and I couldn't see anything. Finally, I came out on the opposite bank. Mother smiled warmly at me.

After crossing the river, we passed through a forest, and came to a vast grassland. We had arrived! The fragrance of many flowers and new grass filled the air. All of us were delighted, and danced a special yak dance. A small river sang a gentle song as we danced. The people busily set up tents. After a while, some yaks were tired from dancing, and lay down on the grass. Everyone was very relaxed.

...

Two nights after we moved to the new grassland, I had a bad dream - a nightmare. I couldn't remember my nightmare clearly, but I had a bad feeling when I awoke. Thick clouds covered the sky and cold rain fell like needles. Blue smoke from the tent wafted into the air. All of us gathered in the yard. Everyone lay on the ground, feeling sleepy.

An hour later, the rain stopped. The fat old woman emerged from the tent. Bringing a bucket, she walked directly toward us with slow steps. After she finished milking, the old woman did something truly amazing. She separated the adult yaks and drove them away from the calves. However, Mother stayed with me. The people were annoyed with Mother, and beat her with sticks and stones. I was puzzled. I couldn't understand why they wanted to separate us. Eventually, Mother couldn't bear their beating, and ran away. I was left alone with the other calves.

The fat woman took us near the tent. The naughty boy herded us behind the tent, near the riverbank. He was an unkind boy, and beat us frequently, causing much suffering. We calves were too young to eat grass, so we depended on our mothers' milk. We spent all day without any food. When our mothers arrived, we were very hungry. But, the people did not let us drink milk immediately. Instead, the people stole our mothers' milk, hiding it in their deep, dark buckets. We had nothing to drink from early morning until late afternoon. Gradually, we learned to eat a little grass and drink a little water. However, grass and water taste terrible compared to milk. I was really angry with the people, but I knew there was no way to take revenge. Because we were animals, we had to do what people made us do. People are our masters, and we are their slaves.

One wise yak often told me, "Yaks' lives are miserable and filled with suffering. A good yak must be a real yak, and a real yak must do many dangerous things in his life. This is a rule we yaks must follow." His wise words made a deep impression on me. My name, Rokdang, always encouraged me to be brave.

The first time they separated me from Mother, I asked her, "Why didn't they let us drink milk?"

She said, "Winter is coming. The people need to store much butter and cheese. These things are made from milk, so the people steal my milk to make their food. We yaks suffer like this because of our bad karma." After that, I decided to eat more grass and drink more water.

...

Several months passed. The weather became colder and colder. Winter arrived. Snow fell on the ground, covering it like a white blanket. We returned to the foot of the mountains. Even there it was cold. We couldn't find any warm places to sleep. Even worse, thick snow covered the grass, so we couldn't find anything to eat. We all suffered. Gradually, we became thinner. Sometimes we found a few bits of grass during the daytime, but at night we were always hungry. Mother became weak from hunger, and fell seriously ill. Some older females nearly died. They were too weak and lay on the ground most of the time.

One dark night the snow was falling heavily. We could not find a place to lie down. All the livestock were standing close together. Our bodies were all shaking. I stood by Mother. My feet were extremely cold from the snow. The yard was calm. I went under Mother where it was a little warmer.

"My dear!" whispered Mother. "This is our bad karma. Many in our herd will die this winter. The sky has punished us with snow, and the earth has punished us by hiding the grass. Who knows why our karma is so bad? Perhaps we did something wrong in our previous lives. However, don't give up. Struggle to live."

"Yes, Mother. I will do my best. I will not give up," I said. The night was very cold and we couldn't sleep.

The next morning when I opened my eyes, all the animals were standing next to me, looking unhappy. "Mother, what happened?" I asked Mother.

"The oldest female died. She was the kindest yak in our herd. I hope her soul will go to the sky," Mother said. We all stood there, crying quietly. The tent was calm and silent in the snow. Eventually, the old woman emerged from the tent. She saw the oldest female lying dead on the ground.

"Bad karma has gone," she murmured, and went back inside the tent.

...

We had a hard life that winter. Almost all the old yaks in the herd died. I guess that was their destiny. There was no way to change it. During the harsh winter I encountered many dangers. Although the winter was difficult, it made me braver than before. I dared face anything, and I made a vow to be braver than before.

The bright spring sun sat in the sky. The vast grassland filled with vitality. All the yaks in the herd began feeling better. As the air became warmer, we could smell new grass. The days slowly grew longer.

It was my second year. The herders called me *yaruh*. In fact, all two-year-old yaks are called *yaruh*. My body had grown. I was already a big yak. In fact, I was the biggest *yaruh*. My horns were as sharp as two knives. Those weapons would protect me if I was in danger. Some of my friends were jealous of my sharp horns. Mother and all my relatives were delighted with my strong body and sharp horns. All the yaks hoped I could help the herd when I became an adult.

Some time during my second year, something unusual happened. One morning, the people brought two bowls of water. One bowl of water was mixed with milk. They also brought some butter with them. They came beside me, and an old man started murmuring. When he finished, he poured the water on my body. I was surprised. Then, he took the butter and put it on my forehead. Next, the old man whispered in my ear, "From now on, you have been saved. We will never kill you. We won't ever sell you. We won't eat your meat after you die. We hope you will give us many offspring. You belong to the mountain god." Then, all the people left quickly.

Mother came to me, smiling. She kindly said, "Every year, this family chooses the best young yak and saves it from death. You are the lucky one this year. Unlike other yaks in this herd, you are free. You don't need to worry any more." Mother's explanation made me joyful.

Mother looked at me and said, "Your father was also a strong male."

I asked, "Where is my father?"

She told me, "He passed away before you came."

"How did he die?" I asked.

She came somewhat closer and said, "This is a long story, but I'll make it short. I was the most beautiful female in our herd. Many males were always circling me. They told me that they loved me. But your father and I loved each other deeply. We always stayed together. He protected me from bad things. But, three years ago, he died in a big storm." She bowed her head and tears filled her eyes.

I wanted to say, "Mother, I will protect you and love you forever," but nothing came out.

I promised myself that I would take care of my dear mother.

...

From my second to my sixth year, I did many things, but nothing very important or memorable. And then I was seven, and my mother was seventeen.

One morning in May, five tall men came to me. They looked at me and murmured something to each other. I don't know what they said. They took a rough rope and put it around my neck. They tied it very tightly. They pulled my neck with the rope. The naughty boy used a stick to beat my back. While they were pulling and beating, I heard them say, "Let's teach him to carry things."

First, they tied my legs with short ropes. I couldn't move. Then, they put the wooden saddle on my back. They tied it with long ropes around my body. The first rope was tied under my neck. The second rope was tied around my chest. The last rope was tied under my tail. It was difficult to breath. The saddle pressed painfully on my back. Afterward, two men took some heavy things. They put them on the two sides of the wooden saddle. When they finished, they untied my legs. My whole body was shaking. I tried to stand, but I couldn't. I just lay on the ground. The men became furious. They beat me with sticks and threw stones at me. I tried to stand up, but it was impossible. "Lazy beast!" they screamed, and beat me. "Stupid animal!" they said, and threw stones at my face. "We ought to beat you to death!"

"That's enough! Stop it!" the old man suddenly shouted. The men untied the rope and took off the saddle. I couldn't stand up, because my right foot was almost broken. There was blood everywhere. The people looked at each other without saying anything. I guess they regretted beating me.

...

After I was injured, the whole herd treated me very kindly. Even the people were kind to me. So, I enjoyed a comfortable life. Time passed quickly. After three months my wound healed. Everyone was delighted. Later, however, my life became terrible again.

One night, after everyone had gone to sleep, a breeze broke my wonderful dream. Everything was calm and quiet, except for the snoring of the old males. Before falling asleep again, I noticed that my mother looked worried.

I asked her, "Dear Mother, what are you thinking about? You look unhappy."

She looked at me and didn't say anything for a while. A moment later she said, "I am thinking about you. You are too naughty."

I said, "Sorry for causing trouble, Mother. "

She looked at me seriously and said, "I worry about you every minute. You must listen to the people. You must do what they say. If you don't obey them, they will be cruel to you."

I lowered my head and said, "OK! Mother, I will do as you tell me."

Then she said to me, "Before you were born, there was a strong male in our herd. He never obeyed the people, and fought them with his horns. Finally, they caught him and slaughtered him with their sharp knives. People's knives are sharper than yaks' horns. Your father was a good yak. He always listened to the people. The people hope you will become a tame yak and help them."

I nodded my head and said, "OK! Dear Mother, I will follow your advice."

Then Mother said, "I am weak these days. I think something will happen to me tomorrow."

"Mother! Don't worry, I'll take care of you," I said.

She looked at me smiling and said, "I am really proud to have a son like you."

Then I knew that Mother wanted to sleep. "Good night," I said, and left her.

The next day when I opened my eyes, the sun had risen in the sky. The bright sun shone on the stream. The clear water looked like broken glass. Smoke appeared above the tent and wafted across the blue sky. Everyone was asleep, and I went to see Mother. Suddenly, two men emerged from the tent. They walked quickly towards us, holding a rope. Mother stood up immediately, and told me, "They are going to slaughter me today."

I was confused. "Why?"

Mother replied, "There is no reason. This is just what people do to us. I worked for them and gave them everything. But finally, everything wasn't enough. Now they will take my body." She continued, "I need to go. Please remember my advice."

The two men came and tied the rope around Mother's neck. They pulled her near the tent. Then the young woman came and untied us. They opened the gate of the yard. I tried to run towards Mother, but they beat me with stones. I was deeply depressed. I went to the mountain but didn't eat any grass all day.

We came back home at dusk. I saw the fire burning brightly inside the black tent. I heard the people laughing and chatting. I smelled cooking meat. They were enjoying Mother's flesh. Tears appeared in my eyes, and flowed endlessly onto the ground.

...

It was a long hot summer. I led a lonely life. I didn't want to eat or drink. Life was meaningless and empty without Mother.

There was a female yak in our herd. She was the same age as me. She was not very beautiful, but she was very compassionate. One day, she came to me and said, "I know you feel bad, but don't be too sad. Life is like that. Yesterday is history, but tomorrow is a mystery. Your mother's death was not your fault. We depend on herders. We never know which yak will die next."

I nodded my head and said, "You are right."

Afterwards, she and I were always together. We shared our stories. One day, she said to me, "Let's go somewhere else."

"Where?" I asked.

"Anywhere with enough grass to eat," she said.

I agreed and we left our herd. We spent three days and nights walking. On the way, we shared everything together. I felt my heart grow closer to her day by day. Finally, we came to a beautiful place. There was more grass and water than at our old grassland. It was near a big forest. Whenever we were hot, we walked into the big forest. We were happy there. When we

were curious, we ran around. When we were hungry, we ate grass. When we were hot, we walked into the forest. Weeks passed liked seconds.

One night a big storm approached, so we ran into the forest. It was really dark in the forest. We couldn't see the moon or any stars.

"I am falling in love with you," I told her.

"I feel the same... I know you are a good male," she said.

Even though I couldn't see her, I knew she was smiling.

We talked about it for a long time. In the end, we shared our first kiss that night.

Just after that, a terrible sound came from the mountains. Wolves! It was a terrible shock. My lover was scared, and her whole body was shaking. I said, "Run! Run to the west!"

We heard the wolves howling behind us. We both ran. I was in front, and my lover was behind me. The howling got closer and closer. At one time, I turned to look back. I saw a wolf jump on my lover's back. Then another, and another wolf jumped on her. There was nothing I could do. I kept running, and the howling got closer and closer. Suddenly, I felt a terrible pain in my leg. I looked back and saw a wolf biting me. I turned and hit him with my sharp horns and he fell to the ground. I continued running and running. Finally I stopped.

The next morning, I woke up. I was on the grassland. My leg was hurt, but my heart hurt worse. I was alive, but my lover had become the wolves' meal.

Now, my life is truly empty. People have taken Mother, and wolves have taken my lover. I have nothing left. I am a homeless yak, wandering in remote places. The herders haven't come looking for me. Alone, I can only hear the sound of my own footsteps. Day after day, year after year, time goes by.

# VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Spell the word correctly.

arebtifhtr	_____	shlgature	_____
damitye	_____	sirsnu	_____
mearbmole	_____	trsntanitoropa	_____
ogfsfnirp	_____	pake	_____
runedses	_____	edeg	_____

Write the missing words.

1. A negative word for animal is b\_\_\_\_\_.
2. The plural of calf is c\_\_\_\_\_.
3. Someone who always wants to know things is c\_\_\_\_\_.
4. Something that smells nice is f\_\_\_\_\_.
5. If you need an injection you use a n\_\_\_\_\_.
6. If you do something again and again you do it r\_\_\_\_\_.
7. If something is holy we can also call it s\_\_\_\_\_.
8. Someone who isn't kind is u\_\_\_\_\_.
9. When you smell something you need to s\_\_\_\_\_.
10. If it isn't nighttime it's probably d\_\_\_\_\_.

Use the words to fill in the gaps.

chest, flesh, mystery, probably, saddle, stupid, fragrance, footsteps, opposite, memorable

1. It is difficult to ride a horse without a \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Your heart is inside your \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The bank is \_\_\_\_\_ the hospital, you can't miss it.
4. He \_\_\_\_\_ won't do the homework – he's very lazy.
5. I don't know where these apples came from. It's a real \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Shhhh. Be quiet! I can hear \_\_\_\_\_ outside.
7. I can smell the beautiful \_\_\_\_\_ of flowers.
8. I had many \_\_\_\_\_ experiences when I visited Lhasa.
9. I may look \_\_\_\_\_ but I'm actually very clever.
10. The wolf bit a piece of \_\_\_\_\_ of the horse, but the horse escaped.

How many new words can you find?

GRLGUPTTNTEUOT  
TYHNLTLDFEDRLP  
DLTLS EEOOERELS  
UDRS DROPMXEAPT  
EEIRATPISYYSPN  
LTBJSOXL LMDEOA  
DARTSEVLA COLPN  
DEEIDDSTUP IDSA  
APTGAGEEGS INOR  
SEFOS EUTHNDRTN  
TRANSPORTATION  
FSAPELDEE ENDONU  
TEDTTSCUR IOUSO  
JADRMS ITOEURYE



GRAMMAR EXERCISES
-------------------

Fill in the gaps with pronouns.

First, they tied \_\_\_\_\_ legs with short ropes. \_\_\_\_\_ couldn't move. Then, \_\_\_\_\_ put the wooden saddle on \_\_\_\_\_ back. They tied \_\_\_\_\_ with long ropes around \_\_\_\_\_ body. The first rope was tied under \_\_\_\_\_ neck. The second rope was tied around \_\_\_\_\_ chest. The last rope was tied under \_\_\_\_\_ tail. It was difficult to breath. The saddle pressed painfully on \_\_\_\_\_ back. Afterward, two men took some heavy things. \_\_\_\_\_ put them on the two sides of the wooden saddle. When \_\_\_\_\_ finished, \_\_\_\_\_ untied my legs. \_\_\_\_\_ whole body was shaking. \_\_\_\_\_ tried to stand, but \_\_\_\_\_ couldn't. \_\_\_\_\_ just lay on the ground. The men became furious. They beat \_\_\_\_\_ with sticks and threw stones at \_\_\_\_\_. \_\_\_\_\_ tried to stand up, but it was impossible. "Lazy beast!" \_\_\_\_\_ screamed, and beat \_\_\_\_\_. "Stupid animal!" \_\_\_\_\_ said, and threw stones at \_\_\_\_\_ face. "We ought to beat \_\_\_\_\_ to death!"

Fill the gaps with: a, the, and.

The sun was setting behind \_\_\_\_\_ western mountains. The light crept to \_\_\_\_\_ edge of the sky as \_\_\_\_\_ mountain's shadow slowly moved over \_\_\_\_\_ valley. Suddenly, \_\_\_\_\_ short, fat old woman appeared. She wore \_\_\_\_\_ brown Tibetan robe. A blue scarf covered her head. Her long sleeves touched \_\_\_\_\_ ground. A young woman and \_\_\_\_\_ small boy were behind \_\_\_\_\_ old woman. The young woman wore \_\_\_\_\_ black Tibetan robe, but no scarf. Her sleeves were tied around her waist, and she was walking as quickly as \_\_\_\_\_ winter wind. Her red cheeks were as red as apples. The boy was wearing jeans and \_\_\_\_\_ t-shirt. He walked slowly behind them. He looked unhappy. He held \_\_\_\_\_ long stick in his hand. It seemed he might beat \_\_\_\_\_ yak. They moved closer to us, and the young woman saw us first.

Write capital letters, commas, and full stops.

while i finished drinking the young woman was collecting yak dung in the livestock yard all the yaks looked happy because they would soon be free they looked at the young woman hoping she would finish her work quickly when the young woman finished she began untying each yak as soon as they were free every yak ran excitedly onto the big grassland the small boy took a stone and threw it towards the yak herd he then shouted all the yaks were shocked by his rudeness and ran away

Fill the gaps with: although, even though, because, so, but, and.

\_\_\_\_\_ I couldn't see her, I knew she was smiling.

\_\_\_\_\_ she didn't say anything, I knew Mother was protecting me.

\_\_\_\_\_ the winter was difficult, it made me braver than before.

\_\_\_\_\_ we were animals, we had to do what people made us do.

All the yaks looked happy, \_\_\_\_\_ they would soon be free.

Even worse, thick snow covered the grass, \_\_\_\_\_ we couldn't find anything to eat.

I couldn't stand up, \_\_\_\_\_ my right foot was almost broken.

I saw tall mountains \_\_\_\_\_ grassland.

I tried to stand, \_\_\_\_\_ I could not.

I was scared, \_\_\_\_\_ I didn't say anything.

Mother \_\_\_\_\_ I were really proud of my beautiful new name.

My hair grew longer \_\_\_\_\_ my horns grew sharper.

One night a big storm approached, \_\_\_\_\_ we ran into the forest.

These things are made from milk, \_\_\_\_\_ the people steal my milk to make their food.

They often wanted to fight with me, and \_\_\_\_\_ I was stronger than them, I never fought.

They were sleeping deeply, \_\_\_\_\_ Mother did not lie down.

We calves were too young to eat grass, \_\_\_\_\_ we depended on our mothers' milk.

We yaks suffer like this \_\_\_\_\_ of our bad karma.

QUESTIONS ABOUT THE TEXT
--------------------------

Comprehension Questions

1. What did he see when he opened his eyes?
2. Describe the woman's appearance that first day.
3. How did mother protect him the first night?
4. How did mother react when the woman touched the calf's head?
5. What did the yaks do after they were untied?
6. What did his mother tell him about yaks' lives?
7. How did he feel when he crossed the river?
8. Where did they go after one month?
9. What did the people name him?
10. When did he have a nightmare?
11. What did they do when the old female yak died?
12. What do they call two year old yaks?
13. When did his father die?
14. What did the men do when he was 7?
15. What did Rokdang do when the men slaughtered his mother?
16. Why did he run away?
17. What happened to his lover?
18. Where did the wolf bite him?
19. How did mother feel when he did not fight other calves?
20. How did he feel when they first milked his mother?

Discussion Questions

1. After reading this, will you treat yaks differently than before? Why or why not?
2. Do you think it is a yak's karma to suffer? Why or why not?
3. Do you think it is better to be a strong yak or a weak yak? Why?
4. If you were a yak, what kind of yak would you like to be?
5. If you were a yak, would you like herders? Why or why not?

True or False?

1. Mother slept on the first night.
2. He often fought with his playmates.
3. His name was Rokdang.
4. He did not like the summer pasture.
5. Second year yaks are called *yaruh*.
6. His father was not strong.
7. The people slaughtered his mother.
8. His lover was eaten by wolves.
9. People beat him when he could not carry the saddle.
10. He was very happy with his life at the end.

WRITING

Imagine you could speak to animals. Which animal would you talk to? Write your conversation.

# UNIT FIFTEEN

## A COLLEGE STUDENT

by Trinlee Nyima

## PREPARATORY EXERCISES

Study this vocabulary before you read the text.

birthday རྩེས་སྐར། 生日  
 borrow གཡེར་བ། 借  
 bribe རྒྱུ་རྩེ། 贿赂  
 clap ཐུལ་མོ་རྩེབ་པ། 拍手  
 clever རིག་པ་ཅན། 聪明  
 copy འདྲ་དཔེ། 副本  
 cybercafé ཏྲ་ཁང། 网吧  
 diploma མཐར་ཕྱིན་ལག་ཁྱེར། 毕业证  
 enraged རྩེད་ཁྱོད་ལངས་པ། 爆怒  
 fried བཻལ། 炒  
 girlfriend དགའ་མོ། 女朋友  
 halfway ལམ་ཕྱེད། 半路  
 pack བཟུ་གསོག། 收拾  
 pajamas ཉལ་ལ། 睡衣  
 playboy རྒྱལ་སྤྱོད་འཆལ་པོ་གཏུམ་བཅན། 花花公子  
 poem རྩེན་ངག། 诗

poet རྩེན་ངག་པ། 诗人  
 pork ཕག་ག། 猪肉  
 punch ཁུ་ཚུར་བྱིས་འཛིངས་པ། 拳击  
 sheepskin ཚ་ཕ། 羊皮  
 sheets རྒྱུ་བ། 纸条  
 sleepily གཉིད་ཐོབ། 疲倦的  
 stairs རྒྱུ། 楼梯  
 stepfather བ་ཡེན། 继父  
 suitcase ཐོས་སྒྲུ། 衣箱  
 textbook རྩོམ་དེབ། 课本  
 thermos ཚ་དམ། 保温瓶  
 ticket འཛིན་ཕོག། 票  
 tipsy ཁུ་རེ་ཁུ་རེ། 有醉意的  
 um ཁུ་མེ་ཚམ་ཕྱེད་པའི་སྒྲ་གདངས། 犹豫的语气  
 workmates ལས་ཀ་ལས་རྒྱུ། 同事  
 wow ཏྲ་ལས་པའི་སྒྲ་གདངས། 惊讶的语气

Discuss these questions.

What challenges do students from the countryside meet when they go to college?  
 What are some common mistakes that college students make?  
 What things should college students avoid? Why?

## WRITING

Imagine that your cousin has just started college in a big city. Write some advice for them.

One morning, in a small village in Padma County, the sun crept across the valley, painting the gray stone houses gold.

Tsomo got up earlier than usual and made breakfast. Her son, Hwambum would leave for college that day. Hwambum lived with his mother and stepfather. He called his stepfather Uncle Zangko. Even though Hwambum was still sleeping, Uncle Zangko was awake. He was burning juniper leaves and asking the deities to bless Hwambum. Zangko woke Hwambum and told him to have breakfast. Zangko said, "Hwambum, I found a school where you can study. Pack up after you finish eating."

Hwambum could not believe it. He gazed at his mother, who silently nodded. Hwambum quickly finished his breakfast. He ran to his bedroom and packed a bag. Zangko and Tsomo smiled at each other. After a few minutes Hwambum ran out of his room and shouted, "I'm ready!" Zangko handed some money to Hwambum, and said, "Take care of yourself!"

Tsomo and Hwambum walked to the bus station together. Tsomo was almost crying as she carried her son's bag. She repeatedly told her son to take care of himself and to chant scriptures often. "Especially, you must work hard in school," she said. Hwambum nodded, got on the bus, and left, saying, "Goodbye, Mother!"

There was no direct bus from Padma County to Chengdu City. Therefore, Hwambum took a bus to Ngawa County Town. On the bus, he sat next to a Tibetan woman but they didn't speak to each other. Sometimes Hwambum slept, sometimes he listen to music on his MP3 player. Four hours later, Hwambum arrived in Ngawa County Town. He got off the bus, bought a ticket for the next day, and found a cheap hotel near the bus station. That night was long, lonely, and boring.

He woke up early the next morning and went to the bus station. When he arrived in Chengdu, the tall buildings amazed him. He stayed in a small hotel near the bus station. He called his mother and told her he'd arrived. Tsomo was delighted.

The next day was warm and sunny. Hwambum put on his Tibetan robe, and went to his new school, Southwest Nationalities University. Inside the gate was a desk. People were helping the new students. Hwambum filled out a form and paid his tuition. Then, someone took him to his dormitory. Next, they went to the classrooms, the library, and a few other places in the school. Hwambum's new head teacher held a meeting and introduced the school. During the meeting, Hwambum sat beside Dorji. Dorji was from Ganzi Prefecture. He was hard-working, kind, and clever. He and Hwambum shared a dormitory room. They soon became good friends.

•••

Hwambum's college life began with two weeks of military training. The school invited soldiers to teach the new students. All the students had to wear soldiers' clothes. They had little time for breaks or meals. Also, it was very hot in Chengdu. Hwambum thought he would die from the heat. The two weeks of military was nothing but suffering – heat, hunger, and exhaustion. Dorji and Hwambum were both delighted when the military training finished and their real classes began.

Both Dorji and Hwambum were Tibetan history majors. However, Dorji came to school because of his excellent exam scores, but Hwambum came because his stepfather had paid a bribe. Hwambum was an average student. Because of this Hwambum struggled in class. He could hardly understand what the teacher said. Hwambum decided to study hard.

With Dorji's help, Hwambum's Tibetan improved. Hwambum practiced writing every day. He often wrote poems. Dorji secretly sent one poem to a magazine. The magazine published Hwambum's poem. They sent Hwambum a copy of the magazine. Hwambum was delighted and

proud.

Hwambum decided to buy dinner for Dorji. They found a cheap restaurant and sat down to look at the menu. Suddenly, someone said, "Don't order anything." It was Nyima from Ganzi. He was at the same school as Dorji and Hwambum. They sometimes played basketball with him. Now, Nyima was sitting with two friends, drinking beer. "Come join us," he said. Dorji and Hwambum joined them.

Nyima gave them each a bottle of beer. Dorji refused, but Hwambum happily accepted. After many bottles of beer, Hwambum was drunk. It was his first time to be drunk. Throughout the night, Dorji constantly asked Hwambum to return to school, but Hwambum ignored him. Around midnight, they all left the restaurant. Nyima and his friends went to a nightclub. Dorji and Hwambum returned to school.

Hwambum was very drunk. As they walked, Hwambum repeatedly said, "Dorji, I am a famous poet and you are my best friend." At first, Dorji was happy to hear this. However, after Hwambum repeated it many times, Dorji was annoyed. Halfway home, Hwambum sat down and said, "Dorji, I am a famous poet. You must buy me a beer. If you don't buy me more beer, I won't move." Dorji was annoyed, but he bought a beer anyway. When they finally arrived in their dormitory room, Dorji helped Hwambum go to bed.

Dorji woke up early the next morning. He looked at Hwambum. Hwambum was snoring loudly. Dorji decided not to wake him, and went to class. When Dorji returned at around noon, Hwambum was still sleeping. Dorji decided to wake Hwambum. "Oh! My head!" Hwambum cried out. They went to eat lunch together, and didn't talk about the night before. Then, they went and studied in the classroom.

A few days later, Nyima invited Hwambum and Dorji to a nightclub. "Let's have a few beers," he said. Dorji refused, but Hwambum accepted. They drank, danced, and sang. That night, Nyima's girlfriend, Dronma, was there. She was very pretty, and spoke Tibetan mixed with Chinese.

Gradually, Hwambum and Nyima became friends. They often stayed in nightclubs all night, and didn't come to class. Dorji often told Hwambum, "Stay away from Nyima. We're from the same hometown. He has a bad reputation. Remember your studies!" Unfortunately, Hwambum ignored his old friend. Hwambum gave up life as a student, and started a new life as a playboy.

...

Hwambum was unhappy because he didn't have a girlfriend. Nyima had a girlfriend, why couldn't he? Nyima realized that Hwambum was depressed and decided to help him. One afternoon, Hwambum and Nyima were playing basketball. Dronma arrived, bringing her friend with her. The beautiful stranger immediately interested Hwambum.

"This is my best friend, Dahdron. She is from Tsongon Province. We're classmates."

Hwambum was shy and couldn't say anything. He just stared at Dahdron, until Nyima secretly kicked him. "Oh!" he said. "I'm Hwambum, nice to meet you," and stretched out his right hand. After they shook hands, Nyima and Dronma left. "You two have a nice time," said Nyima as he left. Hwambum was very shy, and carefully looked at his shoes. Dahdron wasn't shy. She told Hwambum about her life, and Hwambum continued gazing at his shoes. After a while, Hwambum suddenly said, "Do you have a boyfriend?" Dahdron was shocked, but eventually, she replied, "No."

Hwambum moved closer to Dahdron and began talking. She took her cell phone from her pocket and turned it off. Soon, they were having a nice chat.



As darkness fell, Nyima and Dronma returned. Before they arrived, Hwambum asked Dahdron for her phone number. "So," he said, "are you my girlfriend now?" She silently lowered her head in agreement.

Nyima and Dronma arrived. "Let's go celebrate," said Nyima. They took a taxi to a nightclub. Dahdron drank several beers and became tipsy. She suddenly kissed Hwambum's cheek, and said, "I heard you're a famous poet. I hope you write a poem for me one day." Hwambum's half-drunk heart rejoiced.

...

Exams were approaching. Hwambum never went to class. He spent all his time in nightclubs with his new girlfriend and Nyima. His teachers and his old friend, Dorji, often told him work harder. Hwambum ignored them. One day, Hwambum's head teacher said, "I'm going to call your parents." Hwambum begged him, crying, and suggested he could pay a bribe later. The teacher never called Hwambum's parents.

Two days before the exams, Hwambum finally opened his textbooks. He was amazed at all the new information in there. It was totally new to him. Hwambum knew he couldn't pass the exam, so he made cheat sheets. In this way, he passed the exam.

After receiving his exam scores, Hwambum phoned Tsomo and Zangko. They were delighted, and sent him 800 RMB. Hwambum wished it was more, because he wanted to buy a cell phone for his girlfriend. Because he didn't have enough money, Hwambum decided to find a part-time job. He got a part-time job at a nightclub. He phoned Tsomo and Zangko and said, "I won't return during the holiday. I will take an extra class to improve my Chinese." Tsomo and Zangko were delighted to hear this. They thought Hwambum was a hard-working student.

...

Hwambum arrived at home two days before the New Year. The house was already decorated and the food was already prepared. On New Year's Eve, Zangko returned home. He brought a gift for Hwambum – an expensive sheepskin robe. On New Year's Eve Hwambum and his family covered the table with mutton, beef, pork, meat dumplings, fried bread, and many kinds of fruit. They then enjoyed a delicious meal. The New Year celebrations had gradually become Chinese. Most local Tibetans did not sleep that night, because they believed that the New Year began at exactly midnight. That night, Hwambum stayed at home. He helped his mother take care of the guests. Many of Zangko's workmates came to visit and drank liquor. One of Zangko's friends asked Hwambum to drink with them, but Tsomo and Zangko said he should not. They thought Hwambum had never touched liquor or smoked. Zangko and his visitors drank until morning while Hwambum and Tsomo served them.

...

Hwambum stayed at home after the New Year. One day, Hwambum's family was enjoying the sunshine in front of their house. Hwambum's cell phone rang. It was his friend Adu. "Meet me at the school playground. Let's play basketball," he said. As Hwambum was leaving, Tsomo asked him who had invited him. Hwambum's mother had repeatedly told him to stay away from bad people. Adu had a bad reputation in the village, so Hwambum said, "It was a friends from middle school," and then ran away.

Adu and others were already playing basketball when Hwambum arrived at the playground. After a few hours, it became dark, and the players went home. Only Hwambum and Adu remained. Adu handed Hwambum a cigarette and took another for himself. That was the first time Hwambum had smoked during his visit home. He and Adu lay beside the basketball court, smoking and chatting. After a while, Adu and Hwambum went to a bar near the school.

Hours passed. Hwambum was drunk and decided to go home. Walking home, he hoped

his mother was sleeping. He didn't want her to see him drunk. He silently crept through the front door of his home. Unexpectedly, the light turned on and Tsomo yelled, "Is it my son, Hwambum?" Hwambum said nothing. He didn't want Tsomo to smell the beer on his breath. Tsomo appeared, carrying Hwambum's supper. She immediately smelled beer. Tears streamed from her eyes. She knew beating or scolding Hwambum was useless, because he was not a child. Hwambum immediately felt regret. "Don't cry, Mother," he said. Finally, Hwambum also cried. Then, he hugged his mother and promised to stop smoking and drinking.

•••

A new term started and Hwambum returned to school. The school had moved Hwambum and Dorji to new dormitories. Their new rooms were worse than the old ones. This change made all the students unhappy. Hwambum went to his head teacher, but nothing could be done. Their old rooms had been given to new students.

That afternoon, Hwambum went to the train station to meet his girlfriend. He had bought a birthday gift for her – a cell phone that cost 2,000 RMB. Finally, Dahdron's train arrived. Hwambum carefully looked for Dahdron. He eventually found her and said, "Are you tired from the long trip?"

"Yes," she replied, "Let's find a hotel, I want to rest."

Hwambum gave her his gift and said, "Happy birthday!" She was delighted, and hugged Hwambum. On the way to the hotel, they walked arm in arm, laughing and joking.

•••

A month passed and the weather became hot. Wearing a white T-shirt, Hwambum was delighted by the weather. However, he was worried about the weekend, because he didn't have enough money. He went to Tibetan classes in the morning. Then, because he didn't have any money, he didn't eat lunch. Instead, he went to play basketball. Hwambum joined a group of five Han students. Soon, Nyima and three other boys joined them. Hwambum had met Nyima only several times since the beginning of the term.

"Why haven't you called me recently? Did you forget your friend?" Nyima asked Hwambum.

"No, I've been busy with homework," Hwambum replied.

Nyima laughed. "You never do homework! Anyway, we will hold a circle dance here tomorrow night. I hope you will come with your girlfriend," Nyima said, handing him a cigarette.

Hwambum said, "Thanks, but I've quit smoking. I'll be glad to come here tomorrow night," and then he left. He worried about money again. He called Zangko and told him that the school had asked each student to give 1,000 RMB.

"Didn't they collect 500 RMB last month?" Uncle Zangko asked.

"Yes. That was for our class, but this money is for our school," Hwambum answered.

Zangko said, "OK, I'll send the money tomorrow." Hwambum then ran to his dorm. He borrowed 200 RMB from Dorji. He called Dahdron and they ate a nice meal together.

•••

Late the next morning, Hwambum woke up and put on his suit. He walked to the cafeteria, and bumped into Dahdron, who was wearing her pajamas. She was holding a thermos in her right hand and a piece of bread in her left hand.

"Hwambum, why are you staring like that?" Dahdron asked in surprise.

"No reason! Have you eaten?"

Dahdron chewed a piece of bread and said, "Ha! I have now." Hwambum took her thermos and led her into the cafeteria, because he did not want to eat alone. After eating, they went to Dahdron's room. Dahdron prepared for the circle dance while Hwambum waited outside.

Half an hour later, he was exhausted and bored. Eventually, Dahdron emerged.

"Wow, that took a long time," Hwambum said.

"This is what girls are like!" replied Dahdron. It was still two hours before the circle dance. They walked to a cybercafé near the school. Since Hwambum had quit drinking and smoking, he spent a lot of time in cybercafés. He spent all his money on computer games. After a few hours, Nyima called and they left the cybercafé. Many Tibetan students in Tibetan robes had made a large circle and were ready to start.

Many dancers and a large audience had gathered. Hwambum and Dahdron smiled at each other as they danced. The audience really enjoyed the dances, and clapped their hands loudly. Some people made a second circle and tried to copy the dances. After about two hours, everyone was ready to leave, including Hwambum and Dahdron.

...

Time flew past. Hwambum would graduate in two months. He would soon leave the university, hopefully with a two-year college degree. One Friday evening, Hwambum was returning to his dorm after eating. At the school gate, he saw Dahdron. She was talking and laughing with a boy. They were holding hands, and didn't see Hwambum. Hwambum angrily ran to them. "What are you doing, Dahdron?" he asked.

She didn't say anything. "Who is he?" Hwambum asked angrily. Dahdron still said nothing. Enraged, Hwambum ripped off a necklace that Dahdron had given him. He threw the necklace onto the ground, and ran to his dorm. He lay on his bed, wrapped tightly in his blanket. Tears streamed from his eyes. It was the first time he had cried over a girl.

Eventually, he decided to go to a bar for a few drinks. When something sad happened, beer helped him forget. The bar was full of students when he entered. He chose an empty seat in the corner and ordered three bottles of beer. He noticed Nyima's girlfriend nearby. She was drinking by herself and looked unhappy and lonely. She approached Hwambum and greeted him. They sat together and talked about their problems. They drank a lot of beer, and both got drunk. Hwambum found a hotel near the bar, and they shared a room that night.

When Hwambum woke up the next morning, Dronma was beside him. She was naked. Hwambum was embarrassed, dressed, and left quietly. As he walked back to school, Hwambum was worried Nyima would find out. He stopped and ran back to the hotel. "I hope she will keep our secret," he thought as he ran. When he arrived, he found Nyima there, yelling at Dronma. When he saw Hwambum, Nyima grabbed him and angrily asked, "What did you do with my girlfriend last night?" Nyima was enraged – fire was burning in his eyes.

"I caused this," said Dronma. "Don't be angry with Hwambum."

Nyima shouted at Hwambum, "Get out! We're no longer friends!"

Hwambum left. He felt miserable. He had lost his girlfriend and his friend. He had also broken his promise.

...

Hwambum was depressed after that. He often went out drinking at night. Then, he slept all day and didn't go to class. Sometimes, he fought with his classmates. He never called his family except when he wanted money. It seemed that Hwambum was possessed by a ghost.

Late one night, Hwambum was returning to his dorm. He was very drunk and could not walk well. Nearby his dorm, Hwambum bumped into a man. Hwambum looked at the man and said, "Hey, why did you bump into me?"

"You bumped into me!" said the man. Then he grabbed Hwambum and said, "Let's see how brave you are!" Then he punched Hwambum in the face. Hwambum and the man punched each other repeatedly. Suddenly two more men appeared. One of them grabbed a brick and used

it to hit Hwambum in the head. Everything went black.

When Hwambum woke up his face was covered in blood and his head was very painful. He slowly stood up. Suddenly, a light shone in his eyes. A school guard approached. "What are you doing here?" the guard asked Hwambum.

Hwambum turned and replied, "Nothing! It's OK!" The guard was shocked when he saw the blood on Hwambum's face. "Let me help you go to the hospital," the guard said kindly. Hwambum refused at first, but eventually accepted the old man's help. After several hours at the hospital, he returned to his dorm.

The next day, Hwambum woke up in the afternoon. His head was still painful. Dorji was sitting beside his bed, reading a book. "I'm glad you're awake," he said. "Teacher Sonam told me to bring you to his office." Teacher Sonam was Hwambum's favorite teacher and his class's head teacher. He was kindhearted and patient.

"This time I will be scolded," Hwambum thought on the way to the office. "I haven't seen you for a long time, Hwambum. Come in," teacher Sonam said when Hwambum arrived at Sonam's office. "What happened to your head? You're getting worse and worse." Teacher Sonam spoke louder and louder as he scolded Hwambum. His scolding lasted for almost half an hour. Finally, Teacher Sonam said, "The school was going to kick you out, but I stopped them. Now you can go."

Hwambum turned to leave. Tears streamed down his face. "Hwambum, you only have one month left. I'm watching you," Teacher Sonam added. Hwambum hung his head and walked back to the dorm.

...

Hwambum snored, wrapped in a blanket. His roommates had gone to the classroom to prepare for the final exam. After breakfast, Dorji returned to the dorm. "Sleepy Hwambum, wake up!" said Dorji. "You'll be late if you continue sleeping. I've brought you some bread."

Hwambum sleepily asked, "What time is it?"

"The exam begins in thirty minutes!" replied Dorji. Hwambum quickly got ready. "Let's go," he said when he was dressed. "I'll eat this bread on the way." As they walked to the teaching building Hwambum asked, "What's the first exam?"

"Tibetan. Good luck on your exam!" replied Dorji, murmuring scriptures. Dorji and Hwambum were in different rooms, which annoyed Hwambum. He found his seat. Everything was so silent that he could hear his pounding heart. Hwambum was frightened by the difficult exam. He regretted not studying. He had expected that the Tibetan exam would be easy, because he was a famous poet.

After the exams, all the students were chatting in front of the building. "How did you do?" Dorji asked Hwambum. Hwambum looked depressed and did not reply.

"Let's go back to the dorm and pack," said Dorji. When they arrived at the dorm room, Dorji said, "Don't be depressed," and put his arm around Hwambum's shoulder. As Hwambum packed, he realized his bookcase had only one book. Depression and regret filled his heart. He walked out of his room, and went up the stairs to the roof of his dormitory. He recalled everything from the last two years. He could see many students below. Tears streamed down his cheeks.

Three days later, the school gave their scores. Hwambum failed all his exams and was thus unable to get a diploma.

...

The graduates returned home. Hwambum sadly walked to the bus station, pulling his suitcase. As he left the school, he saw his former girlfriend. She was carrying a huge black bag on her back.

Hwambum pretended not to see her, and turned to walk in a different direction. Unfortunately, Dahdron saw him. "Hi, Hwambum!" she called, and ran to him. "Are you going home?"

"Yeah, where else can I go?" Hwambum replied.

Dahdron knew Hwambum was angry, but said, "Could you help me? My bag is too big..." She stared at Hwambum. Hwambum saw that she really needed help, so he took her heavy bag and carried it to the street. They found a taxi and went to the bus station together. They didn't speak as they drove. When they arrived, Hwambum lifted her heavy bag out of the taxi and then said, "Take good care of yourself. I'm leaving."

Dahdron was embarrassed. "Please, phone me. I'm sorry about..." but she couldn't finish her sentence.

"It's finished. No need to mention it," replied Hwambum. Then he turned and left. Tears streamed down Dahdron's cheeks.

Two days later, Hwambum arrived home. "Were there any problems on the way?" his mother asked.

"No, everything was perfect," answered Hwambum.

Hwambum was worried that his mother would ask to see his diploma. He was frightened that his father would ask. As he put down his bag, Hwambum asked, "Mother, where is Uncle?"

"He went to Xining two days ago. He'll return tomorrow," she said. Hwambum relaxed. After chatting with his mother for a while, Hwambum went to visit a friend. Tsomo was curious to see Hwambum's diploma, and opened his suitcase. However, she saw only a few old clothes.

It was almost midnight when Hwambum returned. When he arrived in his bedroom, he found his mother crying on his bed. He turned on the light and ran to her.

"Mother, what happened?" Hwambum asked quietly.

"Where is your diploma?" she asked sadly.

"Mother, I... How did you know?" Hwambum said. Then he told her the truth. She cried but only said, "Your uncle will be furious." Then she went to bed.

The next day Hwambum woke up early and cleaned the house. Hwambum and his mother patiently waited for Zangko, who arrived in the evening with two of his workmates. Zangko was delighted to see the home so tidy. He immediately praised Hwambum. "Hwambum has just graduated from university," he said to his workmates. After a while, Zangko asked Hwambum to show them his diploma. Hwambum and his mother were shocked and their faces turned red. "Bring it quickly!" said Zangko, smiling.

"He, um, lost the diploma," said Tsomo suddenly.

Zangko immediately stood and shouted, "What? You lost it?! Are you a child?" The guests were shocked and frightened. Hwambum lowered his head and said nothing, while Zangko continued scolding Hwambum. The guests were embarrassed and left. On and on, all through the night, Zangko continued scolding Hwambum, who sat silently, hanging his head.

## VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Use these words to answer the questions.

birthday, bribe, cybercafé, pajamas, stepfather, thermos, workmates, tipsy, poet, enraged

1. Which word means money you pay so someone will help you? \_\_\_\_\_
2. Which word means the people you work with? \_\_\_\_\_
3. Which word means clothes that you sleep in? \_\_\_\_\_
4. Which word means a bottle for hot water? \_\_\_\_\_
5. Which word means a little drunk? \_\_\_\_\_
6. Which word means the date you were born? \_\_\_\_\_
7. Which word means very angry? \_\_\_\_\_
8. Which word means your mother's husband, but not your father? \_\_\_\_\_
9. Which word means a place to use the internet? \_\_\_\_\_
10. Which word means a person who writes poetry? \_\_\_\_\_

Group the words.

bribe, clap, clever, diploma, enraged, fried, halfway, playboy, poem, punch, stepfather, suitcase  
textbook, thermos, tipsy, workmates

Verbs: \_\_\_\_\_

Nouns: \_\_\_\_\_

Adjectives: \_\_\_\_\_

Match the word with its meaning.

- |                |   |
|----------------|---|
| 1. wow         | _____ Take something for a short time. You'll give it back later. |
| 2. um          | _____ You say it when you're surprised.                           |
| 3. sleepily    | _____ What a poet writes.   |
| 4. pack        | _____ You buy it to see a movie or take a bus.                    |
| 5. copy        | _____ Do something in a tired way.                                |
| 6. pork        | _____ You say it while you're thinking.                           |
| 7. poem        | _____ The girl that a boy likes.                                  |
| 8. ticket      | _____ Put your clothes in a bag or suitcase.                      |
| 9. borrow      | _____ Pig's meat.   |
| 10. girlfriend | _____ Follow someone's action. Make a book or paper again.        |

GRAMMAR EXERCISES
-------------------

Choose the correct verb form.

Hwambum (was/is) very drunk. As they (walk/walked), Hwambum repeatedly (said/say), "Dorji, I (is/am/was) a famous poet and you (am/is/are) my best friend." At first, Dorji (am/is/was) happy to (heard/hear) this. However, after Hwambum (repeated/repeat) it many times, Dorji (is/am/was) annoyed. Halfway home, Hwambum (sat/sit) down and (said/say), "Dorji, I (am/is/are) a famous poet. You must (bought/buy) me a beer. If you don't (buy/bought) me more beer, I won't (moved/move)." Dorji (was/is/are) annoyed, but he (buy/bought) a beer anyway. When they finally (arrived/arrive) in their dormitory room, Dorji (helped/help) Hwambum (went/go) to bed.

Fill the gaps with conjunctions: so, because, or, while, and.

As darkness fell, Nyima \_\_\_\_\_ Dronma returned.

\_\_\_\_\_ he didn't have enough money, Hwambum decided to find a part-time job.

Gradually, Hwambum \_\_\_\_\_ Nyima became friends.

He ran to his bedroom \_\_\_\_\_ packed a bag.

However, he was worried about the weekend, \_\_\_\_\_ he didn't have enough money.

Hwambum knew he couldn't pass the exam, \_\_\_\_\_ he made cheat sheets.

Hwambum was unhappy \_\_\_\_\_ he didn't have a girlfriend.

Dahdron prepared for the circle dance \_\_\_\_\_ Hwambum waited outside.

They thought Hwambum had never touched liquor \_\_\_\_\_ smoked.

Tsomo got up earlier than usual \_\_\_\_\_ made breakfast.

Zangko \_\_\_\_\_ Tsomo smiled at each other.

Fill in the gaps with pronouns.

Exams were approaching. Hwambum never went to class. \_\_\_\_\_ spent all \_\_\_\_\_ time in nightclubs with \_\_\_\_\_ new girlfriend and Nyima. \_\_\_\_\_ teachers and \_\_\_\_\_ old friend, Dorji, often told \_\_\_\_\_ to work harder. Hwambum ignored \_\_\_\_\_. One day, Hwambum's head teacher said, "\_\_\_\_\_ 'm going to call \_\_\_\_\_ parents." Hwambum begged \_\_\_\_\_, crying, and suggested \_\_\_\_\_ could pay a bribe later. The teacher never called Hwambum's parents.

Fill the gaps with: a, the, an.

\_\_\_\_\_ next day was warm and sunny. Hwambum put on his Tibetan robe, and went to his new school, Southwest Nationalities University. Inside \_\_\_\_\_ gate was \_\_\_\_\_ desk. People were helping \_\_\_\_\_ new students. Hwambum filled out \_\_\_\_\_ form and paid his tuition. Then, someone took him to his dormitory. Next, they went to \_\_\_\_\_ classrooms, \_\_\_\_\_ library, and \_\_\_\_\_ few other places in \_\_\_\_\_ school. Hwambum's new head teacher held \_\_\_\_\_ meeting and introduced \_\_\_\_\_ school. During \_\_\_\_\_ meeting, Hwambum sat beside Dorji. Dorji was from Ganzi Prefecture. He was hard-working, kind, and clever. He and Hwambum shared \_\_\_\_\_ dormitory room. They soon became good friends.

Fill the gaps with: take, carrying, bring, get, getting, bringing.

Dronma arrived, \_\_\_\_\_ her friend with her.

\_\_\_\_\_ out!

He helped his mother \_\_\_\_\_ care of the guests.

Hwambum failed all his exams and was thus unable to \_\_\_\_\_ a diploma.

I will \_\_\_\_\_ an extra class to improve my Chinese.

She was \_\_\_\_\_ a huge black bag on her back.

\_\_\_\_\_ care of yourself!

Teacher Sonam told me to \_\_\_\_\_ you to his office.

Tsomo appeared, \_\_\_\_\_ Hwambum's supper.

You're \_\_\_\_\_ worse and worse.

Write capital letters, commas, and full stops.

adu and others were already playing basketball when hwambum arrived at the playground after a few hours it became dark and the players went home only hwambum and adu remained adu handed hwambum a cigarette and took another for himself that was the first time hwambum had smoked during his visit home he and adu lay beside the basketball court smoking and chatting after a while adu and hwambum went to a bar near the school



QUESTIONS ABOUT THE TEXT
--------------------------

Comprehension Questions

1. Where is Hwambum from? Who is in his family?
2. Where did Hwambum go to school?
3. In the new school, who became Hwambum's friend at first?
4. What did Hwambum do during the first two weeks of college?
5. Why did Hwambum and his friend go out to celebrate?
6. Who did they meet at dinner?
7. What happened when Hwambum took his first exams?
8. What happened when Hwambum went home for New Year?
9. What did Hwambum promise his mother?
10. Who was Hwambum's girlfriend? How did they meet?
11. Why did Hwambum ask Zangko for 1,000 RMB?
12. What happened at the dance?
13. Why did Hwambum break up with his girlfriend?
14. Where did Hwambum meet Dronma? What happened?
15. What happened to Hwambum one night after he'd been out drinking?
16. What did Sonam say to Hwambum?
17. How were Hwambum's final exams?
18. How did Hwambum feel after he graduated, before he went home?
19. Who did Hwambum meet on his way to the bus station?
20. What did Hwambum's mother do when he heard about Hwambum's study result? What did Zangko do?

Discussion Questions

1. Is this story realistic? Do you know any similar stories?
2. What mistakes did Hwambum make? How could he have avoided them?
3. What will happen next to Hwambum?
4. What do Zangko and Tsomo think about education? How did their ideas influence Hwambum?
5. Who is responsible for Hwambum's failure? His friends? His teachers? His parents? Himself?

True or False?

1. Hwambum is a great poet.
2. Dronma is Hwambum's girlfriend.
3. Hwambum's father is Zongko.
4. Nyima helped Hwambum to study.
5. Hwambum was from Xining.
6. Hwambum's mother was very cruel.
7. Hwambum sometimes lied to his parents.
8. Dorji was a good student.
9. Nyima was from Ganzi.
10. Dahdron was from Sichuan.

WRITING

What will Hwambum be doing ten years later? Write about his life.

# ANSWERS

## 01 Fate

Match the word with its opposite

8, 9, 1, 6, 7, 2, 3, 5, 4

Crossword

Across: deceive, foolishly, ambulance, ignorant, mirror

Down: encourage, path, autumn, surrender, cancer, resist, snowman, siren, ink

True or false

1. F 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. F 6. T 7. T 8. T 9. T 10. F

## 02. A Strange Journey

Crossword

Across: faint, cash, shocked, hunter, amulet, approach, comfortable, hired, herd, barren, rob, dung, rifle

Down: vast, livestock, speechless, search, afford, tent, tuition, stove, dawn

Match the word to its meaning.

10, 7, 1, 8, 5, 4, 3, 6, 9, 2.

Fill in the gaps.

flag, confused, buckets, border, excited, dizzy, exhausted, fetch, compassionate, uneducated

Change the word form.

immediate, compassion, confusion, eventual, nomadic, dizziness, robber, invitation, hope, excitement

True or False?

1. F 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. F 6. F 7. F 8. T 9. T 10. F

## 03. Love Conquers All.

Match the word to its meaning.

5, 7, 9, 2, 1, 6, 10, 4, 3

Fill in the gaps.

government, waist, comb, delighted/ impressed, holy, squealed, hugged, tears, fault

Match the word with its opposite.

9, 3, 7, 4, 8, 2, 1, 6, 5.

Crossword: cook, hurry, delighted, amazed, excellent, imagine, excuse  
Down: worried, conversation, anxious, gaze

True or False?

1. T 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. T 6. F 7. T 8. F 9. F 10. F

#### 04. Destroying the Cage

Match the word to its meaning.

9, 12, 14, 15, 1, 11, 5, 10, 13, 2, 3, 8, 4, 6, 7

True or false?

1. T 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. F 6. T 7. T 8. T 9. F 10. T

#### 05. A Cat's Cry, A Child's Tear

Crossword.

Across: intestines, breathe, pillar, mantra, meanwhile, unexpectedly, vinegar

Down: electric line, bark, lap, blanket, destined, clothes, pillow

Spell the words correctly.

cloth, funny, hum, karma, misfortune, mooing, poison, powder, ripped, sticky

Match the word with its opposite.

5, 7, 2, 10, 1, 4, 8, 3, 6, 9.

Match the word with its synonym.

6, 3, 1, 10, 7, 9, 4, 5, 8, 2.

Fill the gaps.

fun, cloth, altar, shrine, funny, clothes.

Change the word form.

chanting, deliciousness, dirt, gradual, humming, weirdness, vomit, pray, pollution

True or False?

1. T 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. T 6. T 7. F 8. F 9. F 10. F

#### 06. Harvesting Fruit

Match the word with its opposite.

10, 3, 1, 8, 9, 6, 4, 5, 7, 2

Spell the words correctly.

attention, compassion, courtyard, information, punishment, tiresome, shabby, forward, drought, hole

Fill in the gaps.

clod, mole, luckily, taste, drought, jewel, sigh, trash, solve

Group these words together:

Nature: dirt, drought, mole, rain, flood

Adjectives to describe people: busy, cruel, hesitant, miserable, weak

Verbs: chat, hesitate, nod, pat, snore

True or False?

1. T 2. F 3. F 4. F 5. F 6. T 7. F 8. F 9. T 10. F 11. F

#### 07. A Turn in His Life

Spell the words correctly.

ache, breeze, cigarette, equipment, humiliation, percent, satisfied, uncomfortable, zombie, rescue  
Crossword.

Across: normal, mutton, rise, countryside, lamb, winnow, kitchen

Down: bookshelf, eager, hometown, cafeteria, squawk, tongue

Fill in the gaps.

lonely, uncomfortable, satisfied, warm, steep, loud, unbelievable, noisy, nice, crooked

Match the word to its synonym.

5, 7, 1, 6, 9, 10, 2, 3, 4, 8

Change the word form.

advise, bravery, consolation, enraged, humiliate, methodical, rare, slow

Group the words/

verbs: ache, cheat, console, enrage, rise, pick, kick, tease, thresh, squawk

nouns: bedtime, bookshelf, breeze, madman, insect, misery, zombie, weather

adjectives: crooked, noisy, lonely, uncomfortable, unbelievable

adjectives: constantly, slowly, rarely

True or False?

1. F 2. T 3. T 4. T 5. F 6. T 7. T 8. T 9. T 10. T

#### 08 Is it Karma?

Crossword.

Across: create, curly, intelligent, granddaughter, sharp, obey, confident, nightmare, blond, thirst, suicide

Down: attention, grandson, fingernails, disappointed, pity, adobe, healthy, regret, brush, kettle, gossip, devil

Match the word to its meaning.

9, 5, 10, 1, 2, 3, 6, 4, 7, 8

Fill in the gaps

arrest, endure, circumambulate, sorrow, prostrate, admire, flames, warning, intend, prison

True or False?

1. F 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T 6. T 7. F 8. T 9. F 10. T

#### 09. Released by Tragedy

Which word doesn't belong?

1. whirled – whirled is a past tense verb, the other words are all adjectives
2. divorce – divorce is a verb, the other words are all nouns
3. dusty – dusty is an adjective, the other words are all adverbs
4. disaster – disaster is a noun, the other words are all verbs
5. roof – the other words are all about the body

Fill in the gaps

construction, despite, frightened, bother, mischievous, attend, attend, lane, overwhelmed, greet

Match the words

7, 10, 2, 8, 1, 9, 3, 4, 5, 6.

True or False?

1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T 6. F 7. F 8. F 9. T 10. T

#### 10 Retribution

Spell the words correctly.

watchdog, vulture, responsible, raincoat, normally, indestructible, entourage, dumbfounded, depressing, approval

Which word doesn't belong?

1. rainy – rainy is an adjective, the other words are nouns
2. ritual – ritual is a noun, the other words are adjectives
3. donation – donation is a noun, the other words are verbs
4. protector – protector ends in 'r', the other words end in 'l'
5. frog – the other words are all religious words

Match the word to its opposite.

5, 7, 6, 2, 1, 8, 9, 3, 10, 4.

Match the word to its meaning

8, 10, 2, 1, 9, 3, 6, 7, 4, 5

True or False?

1. F 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. F 6. T 7. F 8. T 9. F 10. F

### 11. Torn Between Two Lovers

Write letters to complete the words.

accident, complicated, professional, microphone, performance, accompany, sparkling, handbag

Make pairs of related words.

alcohol and beer

male and female

audience and performance

attracted and lover

Match the word with its meaning.

9, 3, 1, 2, 8, 7, 10, 4, 6, 5.

Match the word with its opposite.

4, 5, 1, 6, 2, 7, 3.

Crossword

Across: soup, alcohol, fee, insist, joke, boss, pretend, beer, zoo, urge, male

Down: sofa, lover, custom, dimples, injure, slim, club, upset

Spell the words correctly

complicated, nightclub, microphone, professional, attracted, handbag, performance, sparkling, accompany, audience

### 12. Who is to Blame?

Spell the words correctly.

ashamed, bastard, crazy, imprison, irrigate, mistreat, outgoing, nunnery, sophisticated, solution

Match the word and its meaning.

2, 10, 1, 7, 9, 3, 8, 4, 5, 6.

Fill the gaps.

sentence, kindhearted, unpredictable, humorous, forgiveness, complain, belt, crept, salary, embarrassing

Crossword

Across: agony, sincerely, monster, broom, jealous, unpredictable, irrigation

Down: pacify, hindquarters, feud, messenger, senior, humorous, compliment, reputation

True or False?

1. F 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T 6. F 7. F 8. F 9. F 10. T

### 13. A Singer's Dream

Match the words with its meaning.

6, 1, 4, 9, 2, 7, 3, 8, 5, 10.

Spell the word correctly.

congratulations, longingly, photograph, somewhat, unbearable, rainbow, pounding, melodious, booklet, crevice

Fill the gaps.

legs, shut, vividly, robe pouch, obsession, crevice, longingly, spare, chin, scent

True or False?

1. F 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. T 6. F 7. F 8. T 9. F 10. F

### 14. A Black Yak Grows Up

Spell the words correctly.

afterbirth, daytime, memorable, offspring, rudeness, slaughter, sunrise, transportation, peak, edge

Write the missing words.

beast, calves, curious, fragrant, needle, repeatedly, sunrise, unkind, sniff, daytime.

Use the words to fill the gaps.

saddle, chest, opposite, probably, mystery, footsteps, fragrance, memorable, stupid, flesh

True or False?

1. F 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T 6. F 7. T 8. T 9. T 10. F

### 15. A College Student

Use these words to answer the questions.

bribe, workmates, pajamas, thermos, tipsy, birthday, enraged, stepfather, cybercafé, poet

Group the words.

verbs: bribe, clap, punch.

nouns: bribe, clap, diploma, playboy, poem, punch, stepfather, suitcase, textbook, thermos, workmates

adjectives: clever, fried, hallway, tipsy

Match the word with its meaning.

9, 1, 7, 8, 3, 2, 10, 4, 6, 5

Fill in the gaps.

hallway, poem, stairs, diploma, workmates, poet, clever, borrow, textbook, sheepskin

True or False?

1. F 2. F 3. F 4. F 5. F 6. F 7. T 8. T 9. T 10. F



# GLOSSARY

absent མ་སློབས་པའམ་མ་ཚང་། 缺席  
accident ཆག་སྒྲ། 意外  
accompany རྟགས་ཐུང་། 同伴  
accuse རྒྱན་འཛུགས་། 指控  
ache གཟེར་བྱག་ལང་། 疼痛  
admire ཡིད་སྤྲོད་འཕྱར་། 羡慕  
adobe ས་ཕག་གི་ཡོལ་ཁྱུང་། 用土坯建造的  
adorned རྒྱན་སྒྲུབ་། 装饰; 佩带  
adornments མཛེས་རྒྱན་། 装饰品  
adult དར་མ། 成人  
advice སློབ་སྟེན་། 建议  
afford འགྲོ་བྱོན་གཏོང་བྱེད་། 负担得起  
afterbirth ཤ་མ། 胞衣  
afterward རྗེས་སྟུ། 向后  
agony རྒྱག་བསྐལ་སྦྱེས་། 痛苦, 创痛  
ahead རྒྱུན་དུ། 面前  
alcohol ཆང་། 酒  
alive གསོན་། 活着的  
amazed ཡ་མཚར་། 惊奇  
ambulance རྒྱར་སྐྱབས་རྒྱང་འཁོར་། 救护车  
amulet རྒྱང་འཁོར་། 护身符  
ancestors མེས་པོ། 祖先  
announced རྒྱབ་བསྐྱགས་བྱེད་། 宣布  
annoyed རྒྱན་པར་བྱེད་། 打扰  
anxious བེས་སྒྲུབ་། 担忧  
apologize དགོངས་དག་ལྷ། 道歉  
approach ཉེ་བར་བཅར་། 靠近  
approval འཐད་། 同意  
apron པང་ཁེབས། 围裙  
area ས་ཁུལ། 地区  
arranged བཀོད་སྒྲིག་བྱེད་། 安排  
arrest འཛིན་བཟུང་བྱེད་། 逮捕  
arrogant འབྱིང་ཉམས། 高傲  
ashamed རྩ་ཚ་། 惭愧的, 羞耻的, 害臊的  
aside ཐུར་དུ། 旁边

astonished ཉ་ལས་། 惊讶的  
atop རྟེང་དུ། 在顶上  
attend རྟགས་། 参加  
attention རྩ་མཛད་། 注意力  
attention/pay attention རྩ་ཆེ་སྒྲིམ་། 注意, 注意到  
attracted ཡིད་འགྲུག་། 吸引  
audience ལྷ་མཁན། 观众  
auspicious བག་ཤིས་པའི། 吉祥的  
autumn རྩོན་ལ། 秋天  
avoid གཡོལ་། 避免  
ax ལྷ་རེ། 斧头  
bang དེག་སྒྲ། 重击  
barrel རོ་བ། 桶  
barren ཆེ་ཤིང་རིགས་མི་སྦྱེ་བའི་ས་ཆ་སྐྱམ་པོ། 贫瘠的, 不结果的  
baskets རྩེ་པོ། 篮子  
bastard རྒྱག་བཟན། 坏蛋, 混蛋  
beast གཅན་གཟན། 野兽  
bedtime ཉལ་དུས། 就寝时间  
beer རྩ་རག་། 啤酒  
begging རྩོང་། 乞求  
behavior ཐུའྱུད། 行为  
bell རིལ་བ། 钟  
belly ལྷ་བ། 肚子  
belt སྐ་རེགས། 腰带, 皮带;  
bent རྒྱར་བ། 弯腰  
birth རྒྱུས་བ། 出生  
birthday རྒྱུས་སྐད། 生日  
bit རུང་ཟད། 一点  
bitter དཀའ་སྦྱག་ཆེ་བ། 艰苦  
blame རྒྱག་དམོད། 抱怨  
blessing ཐུན་རྒྱལ། 赐福  
blind མིག་ལོང་། 盲目  
blinded མིག་ལོང་བ། 失明的  
blond བེར་སྒྲ། 亚麻色的  
blooming བཞད་། 正开花的

blush ཇོ་ཚ་ནས་གདོང་དམར་པོར་གྱུར་བ། 脸红  
 boast རང་བསྟོད། 自夸，吹牛  
 boil སྐལ་བ། 煮  
 bomb འབར་འདེལ། 炸弹  
 bones ཐུས་བ། 骨头  
 bony ལུས་བྱངས་ཟད་བ། 瘦骨嶙峋的  
 booklet ལག་དེབ། དེབ་ཆུང་། 小册子  
 bookshelf དཔེ་སྟོན། 书架  
 boom བཞད། 开花  
 border མཚམས། 边境  
 borrow གཡར་བ། 借  
 boss ཚང་དཔོན། 老板  
 bother བར་ཆད་བཟོ་བ། 烦扰  
 boulder ས་བོངས། 巨石  
 boyfriend དགའ་ཤོགས། 男朋友  
 bracelet ལག་གདུབ། 手镯  
 braid སྒྲ་ཕྱས་མ། 辫子  
 braid སྒྲ་བ། 编辫子  
 brave དཔའ་བོ། 勇敢的  
 breeze བཞེར་བ། 微风  
 bribe སྒྲིག་རྒྱ། 贿赂  
 brick ས་པག་ 砖  
 bride བག་མ། 新娘  
 briefly མདོར་བཟུས་ངང་། 大概地  
 broom ཕྱགས་མ། 扫帚  
 brush (v) བྱ། 擦  
 bubble བྱ་བ། 泡  
 bucket མོ། 桶  
 bullet མདེལ། 子弹  
 bumpy རྩེ་ལྗངས་གཡོ་བའི། 颠簸的  
 busy ཐེལ་འཇུག། 繁忙  
 cafeteria ཟ་ཁང་། 食堂  
 cage གཞེབ། 笼子  
 calf/calves བེལ། 小牛  
 calm རྩིང་འཇགས། 平静的  
 cancer འབས་སྒྲན། 癌症  
 candle འག་སྒྲན། 蜡烛  
 card སྒྲ་བྱང་། (电话) 卡

cash དངུལ་སྒོར། 现金  
 caterpillar fungus དབྱར་ཆ་དགུན་འབྱ། 冬虫夏草  
 caw ཀྲ་ཀྲ་ཁྱ་ཏའི་སྐད་ཅེད། 呱呱  
 ceiling གནམ་བཙད། 天花板  
 charming ཡིད་དྲ་འོང་བ། 可爱的  
 chat ཁ་བརྒ། 聊天  
 chatter འཆལ་གཏམ། 唠叨  
 cheap རིན་གོང་སྒྲ་མ། 便宜  
 cheat མགོ་སྒྲར་གཏོང་བ། 欺骗  
 cheese ཆུར་བ། 奶酪  
 chest ཟང་ཁ། 胸部  
 chew ཟད་བ། 嚼碎  
 childish བྱས་སྒྲ་བ། 幼稚的  
 chimney དུ་ཁྱང་། 烟囱  
 chin མ་ན། 下巴  
 chunk རྒྱ་པོ། 大块  
 cigarette ཐ་མག་ 香烟  
 circumambulate སྐར་བ་བྱེད་བ། 转经  
 clap ཐལ་མ་རྒྱུ་བ། 拍手  
 clench དམ་པོར་འཛིན་བ། 紧握  
 clever རིག་པ་བ། 聪明  
 climb འཛིག་བ། 爬  
 clock ཆུ་ཚོད་འཁོར་ལོ། 时钟  
 clod ས་རྩོག་ པོ་མ། 土块  
 clothing ཐྱན་གོས། 衣服  
 clutch དམ་པོར་འཛིན། 抓紧  
 collapse རིབ་བ། 倒塌  
 collect བཟུ་གསོག། 收集  
 comb (v) སྒྲ་གད་བ། 梳子  
 comfortable བདེ་ཤིང་བྱིད་བ། 舒适  
 compassion རྩིང་རྒྱ། 慈悲  
 compassionate རྩིང་རྒྱུ་བ། 同情  
 complain ལས་འདོད་བ། 抱怨，诉苦  
 complicated རྒྱ་མཐོངས་ཅན། 复杂  
 compliment (v) བརྟོད་པ་བྱེད་བ། 赞美  
 computer རྩིས་འཁོར། 计算机  
 concentrate སྒྲ་རྩི་གཅིག་བྱེད། 集中  
 conch དུང་། 海螺

confident ཡིད་ཆེས་ཡོད་པ། 自信  
 confused མགོ་རྫོག་པ། 困惑  
 congratulations ཉེན་འབྲེལ་བྱ། 祝贺  
 console སེམས་གསོ་གཏོང་པ། 安慰  
 console སེམས་གསོ། 安慰  
 constantly མི་མཐུད་དུ། 不断地  
 construction བཟོ་སྐྲུན། 建设  
 consult སློབ་སྦྱོར་བྱེད་པ། 顾问  
 conversation ཁ་བདེ་ཐྱེད་མཉམ་པ། 会话  
 cook ཟས་གཡེ་སྦྱར་བྱེད་པ། 做饭  
 copy འདྲ་དཔེ། 副本  
 coral ཐུ་རྩ། 珊瑚  
 corpse མི་རྩ། 尸体  
 couch རྩེབ་སྒྱིག་རྒྱུབ་ཀྱི། 睡椅  
 countryside ཁིང་ཁྲོད། 乡下  
 couple རྒྱ་ལྷན། 夫妻  
 courage རྩིང་སྣང་པ། 勇气  
 courtyard ར་སྐོར། 庭院  
 coward ཐུར་མ། 懦夫  
 crazy རྩུན་པ། 发疯的  
 creased (adj) བརྩེར་པ། 起皱纹的  
 create ལས། 做  
 creep/ crept བཞོག་ནས་འཕྱོག་པ། 爬行  
 crevice སེར་ཁ། 裂缝  
 crooked རྒྱག་འཕྱོག་པ། 弯曲的  
 crops རོ་རྩྭ། 农作物  
 crow ལ་ཏ། 乌鸦  
 cruel ཀའདྲག་རྩུབ་ཅན། 残暴  
 crushed བཅིར་པ། 压碎  
 curiosity རོ་མཚར་གྲེས་འདོད་པའི། 好奇心  
 curious ཡ་མཚན་ཅན། 好奇的  
 curly རྒྱུ་བྱིལ། 卷 (发)  
 curtains ཡལ་བ། 窗帘  
 custom རྒྱུགས་སྒྲིལ། 风俗  
 cybercafé ཏྲ་ཁང། 网吧  
 dagger རྩྭ་གྲི། 匕首; 短剑  
 damp རྩུབ་ཁིང་གཤེར་པ། 潮湿的  
 dawn རྒྱ་རེངས། 黎明

daytime ཉིན་དགུང། 白天  
 deceased གཤེགས་པ། གཏུ་བ། 去世的  
 deceive མགོ་སྐྱར་གཏོང་པ། 欺骗  
 deity ལྷ། 神  
 delighted དགའ་སྤྲོ་སྤྱོད་པ། 高兴的  
 depart ཐུལ་བ། 离开  
 depressing ཡིད་ལྷུན་པ། 令人郁闷的  
 descend ཐུར་དུ་འབབ་པ། 下降  
 descendants མི་རབས་གོང་མ། 祖先  
 deserve འོས་འཚམས་གྱི་སྒོ་ནས། 应得  
 despite གང་ཉར། 不管, 尽管  
 despite མ་གཏོགས། 除了  
 devil བདུད་འདྲི། 魔鬼  
 dew ཐེལ་བ། 露水  
 dialect རྩལ་སྐད། 方言  
 digging ས་སྒྲག་པ། 挖掘  
 dimples མངོ་གོང། 酒窝  
 diploma མཐར་ཐྱིན་ལག་ཁྱེར། 毕业证  
 dirt road ས་ལམ། 土路  
 dirt ཆོལ་དགས། 污垢  
 disabled དབང་ཐོ་སྦྱོར་ཅན། 残废的  
 disappoint ཡིད་ཆད། 失望  
 disappointed རྩོ་ཕམ་པ། 失望  
 disaster གཞོད་འཚོ་གོད་ཆགས། 灾难  
 disease རྩ་ཚ། 疾病  
 disobey ཁ་མི་ཉན་པ། 不服从  
 disturb བར་ཆད། 打扰  
 divination མ་འདེབས། 预言  
 divorce གཉེན་འཛོམས། 离婚  
 dizzy མགོ་ཡོམ་འཁོར་བ། 眩晕  
 donate ཐུན་པ། 捐献  
 donation ཞལ་འདེབས་དངོས་པོ། 捐赠物  
 dorm ཉལ་ཁང། 宿舍  
 dragon འབྲུག། 龙  
 drenched ཐུང་པའམ་རྩུན་པར་བཏང་བ། 湿淋淋的  
 drift དལ་བྱིས་ཡལ་བ། 漂移  
 drip ཐེགས་པ། 滴  
 drought ཐུན་སྐྱུ། 干旱  
 dumbfounded ཉ་ལས་གིང་ཉང་སང་པ། 愣住了的

dung རྩ་བ། 粪  
 during གསལ་ལུ། 在...时候  
 dust བ་རྩལ། 灰尘  
 dusty རྩལ་རྒྱུ་ཅན། 有灰尘的  
 eager འདོད་པ་ཆེན་པོ། 渴望的  
 earn སྒྲར་སྒྲུག་པ་ཚལ་བ། 挣  
 edge མཐའ། 边缘  
 educated/ uneducated སྒྲོ་བ་གསོ་ཐོབ་པ། གསོ་ཡོན་ཕྲན་པ།  
 elder (adj) གན་པ། 年长的  
 elope གསང་སྒྲུབ་ཀྱིས་གཉེན་སྒྲིག་ཕྱིར་དུ་འཛོ་བ། 私奔  
 embarrassing རོགས་མེ་བདེ་བ།  
 embers མེ་ན། 灰烬  
 embroidered གཙག་གུབ། 绣花; 刺绣  
 enclosure ལྷས་ར། 围绕, 围墙  
 encourage སྒྲོ་སྒྲུབ་སྦྱིད་པ། 鼓励  
 endure བཟོད་སྒྲུབ་ཕྱིར་བ། 容忍  
 energized གསོན་ཤུགས་ཕྲན་པ། 激励的  
 energy རྩལ་ཤུགས། 精力  
 enrage ཁོང་སྒྲོ་སྒྲོང་བ། 激怒  
 enraged ཁོང་སྒྲོ་སྒྲོང་བ། 爆怒  
 entourage འཁོར། 随员  
 equipment ཡོ་ཆས། 设备  
 especially ལྷན་པར་དུ། 特别地  
 eventually འཇུག་མཐར། 最终地  
 exactly ཉག་ཉག། 确切的  
 excellent ལྷན་དུ་འཕགས་པ། 很棒  
 excited རྒྱལ་འོ་སྒྲུབ་པ། 激动的  
 excuse (n) ལ་གཡལ་བ། 借口  
 exhausted ཐང་ཆད་པ། 精疲力尽的  
 expel ལྷུགས་པ། 驱逐  
 explode གས་པ། 爆炸  
 eyebrows སྒྲིན་མ། 眉毛  
 eyelashes རྩེ་མ། 眼角毛  
 faint (adj) མག་མོ། 模糊的  
 faint (v) བརྒལ་བ། 昏倒  
 fascinated ཡིད་འགྱུག་ཐེབས་པ། 强烈地吸引, 迷住  
 fashionable དར་ལྷན་ཆེ་བ། 流行的  
 fate ལས་དབང། 命运  
 fault རྩོད་འཇུག། 错误

fee རྩ་ནེ་ཡོན། 费用  
 female མ། 女性  
 fetch རྩ་བརྩ་བའམ་ལེན་པ། 取, 拿  
 feud རྩུ། 宿怨, 不和  
 finally མཇུག་མཐར། 最后地  
 fingernails སེན་མོ། 指甲  
 fireball མེ་ལྷུ་ཉི་མ། 火球, 文中特指太阳  
 fireworks ཤྒྲག་ཐྱག། 烟火  
 fist ལུ་ཚུར། 拳头  
 flag དར་མ། 旗子  
 flames མེ་ལྷེ། 火焰  
 flash འད་འཇུག་པ། 闪电  
 flat རོ་མ་ཉམ་པ། 平坦的  
 fled ཐོས་ཐོལ། 逃离  
 flesh ལུས། ཤ་ཁྲག་གི་ཕུང་པོ། 肉体  
 float གཡེང་བ། 漂浮  
 floating ལྷུས་འཇུར་བ། 漂浮  
 flock ལྷུ། 群  
 flood རྩ་ལོ། 洪水  
 foggy ལྷུག་འཐེབས་པ། 雾气朦胧的  
 fold (v) རྩེ་བ་པ། 折叠  
 folk དམངས་ཁྲོད། 民间的  
 foolishly ལུན་པ། 愚蠢地  
 footsteps སྒོ་མ་པ། 脚步  
 forbidden བཀག་སྒྲུམ། 禁止的  
 forever གཏན་དུ། 永远  
 forgiveness ལྷ་ཡངས། 原谅, 饶恕  
 fortune teller མ་བ། 算命者  
 forward མདུན་དུ་ཕྱགས། 朝前  
 fragrance/fragrant རྩི་བཟང། 香味  
 fried བཙོ། 炒  
 frightened ལྷུག་པ། 受惊的  
 frog ཐུལ་བ། 青蛙  
 frown (v) ཁོང་སྒྲོ་སྒྲོང་བ། 愤怒  
 frozen (adj) འཇུགས་པ། 冻的  
 funeral འདས་མཆོད། 葬礼  
 furious རྩོ་བ། 暴怒的  
 gaze ཕུར་ཚུགས་ལུ་བརྩ་བ། 盯视  
 generous གཏོང་པོད་ཅན། 慷慨的

girlfriend དགའ་མོ། 女朋友  
goddess ལྷ་མོ། 女神  
gossip འཆལ་གཏམ། 绯闻  
government སྲིད་གཞུང། 政府  
grab ཐྱར་འཇུ། 抓  
graduate མཐར་ཐྱིན་པ། 毕业  
grandchildren ཚ་བོ་ཚ་མོ། 子孙  
granddaughter ཚ་མོ། 孙女  
grandson ཚ་བོ། 孙子  
grassland ལྗེ་ཐང། 草原  
grateful དྲིན་ཆེ་བའི། 感激的  
greet འཚམས་འདྲི། 问候  
groom མག་པ། 新郎  
guard (v) གྲུང་སྒྱུབ། 保护  
guest མགྲོན་པོ། 客人  
guilty རྟག་ཉེས་ཅན། 内疚的  
gun མེ་འདའ། 枪, 炮  
halfway ལམ་ཕྱེད། 半路  
handbag ལག་ཁྲུག། 手提包  
healthy བདེ་ཐང། 健康  
heartbeat རྩིང་ཐིང་བ། 心跳  
herd (v) ཐུགས་འཛོལ། 放牧  
hero དཔལ་ལོ། 英雄  
hesitant ཐེ་ཚོམ་ཅན་གྱི། 犹豫的  
hesitate ཐེ་ཚོམ་སྒྲུབ་པ། 犹豫  
hidden ཐུས་སྒྲུང། 隐藏的  
high-heeled རྟིང་ཚྲོག་ལྷམ་ལྷམ་ཕྱི་མཚོ། 高跟鞋  
hindquarters ཐུག་པ། 后肢, 后腿  
hire མི་སོགས་སྒྲུབ་པ། 雇用  
hobby དགའ་ཚུགས། 爱好  
hoe འཛོར། 锄头  
hole ཐུག་ཅུག། 洞  
holidays ཞུང་མེད། 假期  
holy ལྷ་ན་མེད་པའི། 神圣  
homesickness རྩལ་གདུང། 乡愁  
hometown བ་ཡུལ། 家乡  
hopeful རེ་བ་ཅན། 有希望的  
horrible ཐུ་བཙོག་པོའི། 可怕的

horrible ཐུ་གཡལ་བ། 可怕的  
housework ཁྱིམ་ལས། 家务活  
hug འཐམ་ཁྱུད་ཕྱེད་པ། 拥抱  
huge ཆེན་པོའི། 巨大的  
humiliation དམའ་འབེབས། 羞辱  
humorous དགོད་ཚོ་བའི། 幽默的  
hunter རྟན་པ། 猎人  
hurry ཟུར་འཇོག་ངང། 急忙  
ice ཆབ་རོམ། 冰  
ignorant གཉི་མུག་ཅན། 愚昧的  
ignored ཁ་ཡ་མི་ཕྱེད་པ། 忽略的  
imagine འཆར་སྣང་བྱེད་པ། 想象  
immediately དེ་མ་ཐག་གྱ། 立刻  
impressed བག་ཆགས་ཟབ་པའི། 使印象深刻  
imprison བཙོན་འཇུག་བྱས་པ། 监禁  
improve མཐོར་གདེགས། 提高  
incense བདུག་སྒྲོག། (烧)香  
indestructible འཇིག་རྒྱུ་མེད་པ། 不可破坏的  
infinite འཇོད་མཐའ་མེད་པ། 无限的  
information བད་འཕྲིན། 信息  
injure མས་པ། 受伤  
ink ལྷག་ཚ། 墨水  
insect འབྲུ་མིན། 昆虫  
insist ཐུན་འཁྱུངས། 坚持  
inspired བེམས་འགྲལ་ཐེབས་པ། 激励  
instantly དེ་མ་ཐག་གྱ། 立即地  
insult དམའ་འབེབས་བྱེད་པ། 侮辱  
intelligent རིག་པ་རྣེས་པ། 聪明  
intended བསམ་བཞིན་དུ། 有意的  
interrupt བར་ཆད་གཏོང་བ། 打断  
interview བཅར་འདྲི། 采访  
invite གདན་འདྲན་བྱ་བ། 邀请  
irreconcilable འོས་འཚམ་མེན་པ། 不妥协的  
irrigate ཁིང་ལ་རྩ་གཏོང་བ། 灌溉  
irrigation རྩ་མ། 灌溉  
IV གནས་ཁབ། 吊针, 点滴  
ivory བ་སྒྲ། 象牙  
jealous ཐུག་དྲིག་བྱེད་པ། 妒忌的

jeans གང་ཇི་དོར་མ། 牛仔裤  
 jewel རྩོམ་བྱ། 珠宝  
 jewelry རིན་པོ་ཆེ། 珠宝  
 job བྱ་བ། 工作  
 joke ཀྱ་རེ་བཞེ། 玩笑  
 jump ཐུང་བ། 跳  
 juniper ཤིང་ཤུག་པ། 杜松, 柏树  
 kettle དེམ། (茶) 壶  
 kick རྟོག་རྒྱུ། 踢  
 kidding ཀྱ་རེ། 玩笑  
 kindhearted རེ་མས་བཟང་ཅན། 好心的  
 kiss འཕྱེད་པ། 吻  
 kitchen ཐའ་ཚང་། 厨房  
 knife གྲི་རྩུང་། 刀  
 ladder ཐེམ་སྐོས། 梯子; 阶梯  
 lamb ལྷ་གུའི་ཤ། 羔羊  
 lane ཐང་ལམ། 小巷, 跑道  
 lazy རྒྱུད་ལྷག། 懒惰  
 legs ཀླང་བ། 腿子  
 lend གཡུར་བ། 借  
 limp (n) ར་འཐེང་། 一瘸一拐  
 liquor མ་རག། 酒精  
 livestock སྐྱ་ཕྱགས། 家畜  
 loneliness ཁེར་རྒྱང་། ལུན་རྩུང་། 寂寞, 孤独  
 lonely ཁེར་རྒྱང་། 孤独的  
 longingly རེ་སྐྱུག་ངང་། 渴望地  
 loud རྒྱང་ཙོར། 大声的  
 lounge ངལ་གསོ་ཁང་། 休息室  
 lover བྱམས་པ། 情人  
 luck བསོད་ནམས། 运气  
 luckily ལས་ལེགས་པ། 幸运的  
 lunar month རྩྭ་ཁྲི། 农历  
 madman རྩྭ་བ། 疯子  
 magic རྩུ་འཕྱུག། 魔术  
 majestic བརྒྱུད་ཆགས་པའི། 高贵的, 壮丽的  
 male ཤ། 男性  
 marvelous ཡ་མཚན་ཅན། 非凡的  
 matchmaker བར་བ། 媒人

math གུངས་རིག། 数学  
 melodious རྩན་འཛེབས་ཐུན་པའི། 旋律美妙的  
 memorable བརྒྱུད་དུ་མི་རུང་བ། 值得纪念的  
 messenger འཕྲིན་སྐུལ་མཁན། མོ་ཉ། 送信人  
 messy མང་ཤིང་བཙོག་པ། 肮脏的  
 meter མིད། 米  
 method ཐབས་ལམ། 方法  
 microphone རྒྱང་དུང་། 话筒  
 mirror མེ་མོང་། 镜子  
 mischievous བྲ་ཆགས། 调皮的  
 miserable ཉམས་ཐག་པའི། 悲惨的  
 misery རྒྱག་བཟུལ། 痛苦  
 mistreat མནར་གཅོད་གཏོང་བ། 虐待  
 mixed འདྲེས་མ། 混合  
 moan རྩུང་བྱེད་པ། 抱怨声  
 mole རྩེ་བ། 痣  
 monastery དགོན་པ། 寺  
 monster གདོན་འདྲེ། 怪物  
 mood རེ་མས་ཁམས། 情绪  
 mop རྩལ་ཕྱགས། 拖地  
 motherless མ་མེད་པའི། 丧母的  
 muddy འདམ་ཉྑག་ཅན། 泥泞的  
 murderer གཤེད་མ། 刽子手  
 murmur བྱབ་ལབ། 低语  
 mutton ལྷག་ཤ། 羊肉  
 mysterious གསང་བ། 神秘的  
 mystery རྟོག་ཐུང་། 神秘  
 naked གཅེར་བྱ། 赤裸裸的  
 necklace རྟོ་རྒྱ། 项链  
 needle ཁབ། 针  
 nervous རེ་མས་འཚབ་པ། 担忧的  
 nest བྱ་ཚང་། 巢  
 nevertheless འོན་ཀྱང་། 但是  
 nice ལེགས་པོ། 美好的  
 nightclub, club རྩང་མ་ཁང་། 夜总会  
 nightmare རྩེ་ལམ་ངན་པ། 噩梦  
 nod མགོ་ལྗང་བ། 点头  
 noise ཀྱ་ཙ། 喧闹声

noisily རྒྱུ་ཚོད། 吵闹地  
noisy ཅ་ཚོསྒྲིག་པའི། 喧闹的  
nomad འཕྱོག་པ། 牧民  
noon ཉིན་གུང། 中午  
normal རྒྱུ་བཏང་གི། 正常的  
normally རྒྱུ་བཏང་དུ། 平常的  
notebook ཟེན་ཐིག་། 笔记本  
numb ཟུང་པ། 麻木  
nunnery རྩོམ་དགོན་པ། 女修道院  
obey ལ་ཉན་པ། 听话  
obsession རེམས་ནད། 困扰  
odor འྲི་མ། 气味  
offspring མི་རབས་རྗེས་མ། 子孙， 后代  
opposite ལ་གཏད་པའི། 对面的  
ornament རྒྱན་ཆ། 装饰  
outgoing རྩེད་གཤམ་ཅན། 开朗的  
overcast རྒྱུན་འཁེབས་པ། 阴沉的  
overcome (overcome difficulties) བུད་གསོད།  
overwhelmed མང་བས་ཤེས་ཀྱིས་ཐེག་དཀའ་པ།  
pacify ཞི་འཇགས་བཟོ་པ། 使镇静  
pack བཟུ་གསོག། 收拾  
pain རྩ་བ། 疼痛  
pair ཆ། ཟུང། 双， 对  
pajamas ཉལ་ལ། 睡衣  
pale རྒྱ་མདངས་ཅན། 苍白的  
pat རྩེ་བ་པ། 轻拍  
path རྒྱང་ལམ། 小道  
peak རི་ཆེ། 山峰  
peek རྟོག་ལྷ། 偷看  
percent བརྒྱ་ཆ། 百分比  
perform རྩེད་སྤྲོལ་པ། 表演  
performance འཇུག་སྒྲུ། 表演  
photograph འདྲ་པར། 照片  
pick རྟོག་པ། 挑选  
picked བཏུས་པ། 捡起来  
pile རུང་པོ། 堆  
pilgrim/ pilgrimage གནས་འཇུག་པ།  
pinch (v) གཙུག་པ། 掐  
pitch (v) རུབ་པ། 搭建

pity (v) རྟོང་རྩེ་བ། 可怜  
plate རྩེ་མ། 盘子  
playboy རྒྱལ་སྤོང་། འཆལ་པོ་གཏུམ་བཙན། 花花公子  
playground རྒྱས་རྩལ་ར་བ། (学校的)操场  
playmate རྩེད་གྲགས། 玩伴  
poem རྒྱན་ངག། 诗  
poet རྒྱན་ངག་པ། 诗人  
police ཉིན་རྟོག་པ། 警察  
polite རྒྱས་ལུགས་ལྡན་པ། 有礼貌的  
pork བག་ག། 猪肉  
pounding རྩེད། 跳  
pray རྒྱན་ལམ་འདེབས་པ། 祈祷  
prayer flag དར་རྒྱུག། 经幡  
precious རྩ་ཆེན། 珍贵的  
predict རྩེན་དཔག། 预测  
pregnant མངལ་ཆགས་པ། 怀孕的  
pretend བཟོ་རྒྱུན་བྱེད་པ། 假装  
principal རྩོལ་གཞི། 校长  
prison བཙོན་ཁང། 监狱  
probably བཤམ་ཆེད། 或许  
professional རྩེད་ལས་ཀྱི། 专业的  
prostrate རྒྱགས་འཚལ། 磕头  
protector རྒྱང་མ། 护神  
proudly ང་རྒྱལ། 自豪地  
punch རྒྱ་ཚུར་གྱིས་འཛོངས་པ། 拳击  
punishment རྩེད་པ། 惩罚  
push འཐུད་རྒྱག་གཏོང་པ། 推  
quickly མཐུག་གསལ་རྒྱུར་ངང། 很快地  
quiet རྒྱ་སེམ་པོའི། 寂静的  
rage རྩེད་ཁྲོ་ལངས། 愤怒  
rain རྩེ་བ། 雨  
rainbow འཇུག་ཆེན། 彩虹  
raincoat རྩེ་མ་ལ། 雨衣  
raindrop རྩེ་མེགས། 雨滴  
rainy རྩེ་བ་འཁེབས་པའི། 下雨的  
rarely རྒྱ་བས་རྒྱ་བས་སྤ། 很少地  
recall རྒྱུར་དྲན་བྱེད་པ། 回想  
regret འཐུད་པ། 后悔

relaxed རྩོད་གཡོང་། 放松  
relaxing ངལ་གསོ་བྱེད་པ། 休息  
relieve སེལ་བ། 解除  
remarry གཉེན་བསྐྱར་སྒྲིག་ 再婚  
remind བློ་སྤུལ། 使想起  
remote མཐའ་འཁོབ་ཀྱི། 偏远的  
repeat བསྐྱར་སྒྲིག་བྱེད་པ། 重复  
repeatedly ཡང་ནས་ཡང་དུ། 反复地  
reputation མཚན་སྒྲན་གྲགས། 名气，名声  
rescue སྐྱབ་པ། 营救  
resist རྒོལ་བ། 对抗  
resistance རོར་རྒྱལ། 反对  
respond ལན་བསྐྱེན་པ། 回复  
responsible འགན་ཁུར་གྱི་འདུ་ཤེས་ཡོད་པ། 责任感的  
retribution རན་ལན། 报应，罚  
riddle གཤམ་ཆེན། 谜语  
ridiculous བྱད་འཚར་བའི། 荒谬的  
rifle མེ་མདའ། 步枪  
ripple བྱབས་པ། 蔓延  
rise འཆར་བ། 升起  
ritual ཆོག་ 仪式  
riverbank རྩ་འགམ། 河崖  
rob འཛོག་བཅོམ། 抢劫  
robe pouch ཐུམ། 长袍口袋  
roof ཁང་ཐོག་ 屋顶  
row བསྐྱར་བ། 行，排  
rub ཕྱི་དོར་བྱེད་པ། 擦  
rudeness རྩོལ་སྤྱད། 粗鲁  
rumor འཆལ་གཏམ། 谣言  
rush འཚང་ཁུ་བྲལ་འཚབ། 仓促完成  
rustle ཤག་སྒྱ། 沙沙作响  
sack རས་ཁྱུག་ 布袋  
sacred མཚན་གྱུར། 神圣的  
sacrifice སྐྱེས་གཏོང་བ། 牺牲，献祭  
saddle ཉ་སྒྱ། 鞍  
salary སྤ་ཐོག་ 薪水  
sash སྒྱ་རགས། 丝带  
satisfied ཡིད་ཚམས་པའི། 满意的

scared སྐྱག་པ། 使害怕  
scatter གཏོར་བ། 散开  
scent འི་ཞིམ། 香味  
scholar མཁས་པ། 学者  
scold སྐྱག་དམོད་བྱེད་པ། 责备  
score ཐོབ་གྲངས། 得分  
scripture ཆས་དཔ། 经文  
search འཚལ་ཞིབ་བྱེད་པ། 搜寻  
searching འཚལ། 寻找  
senior མན་པའམ་ལོ་ཆེ་བ། 年长的  
(prison) sentence ཞིམས་ཐག་བཅད་པ། 判决  
shabby ཏལ་ཏལ། 破旧的  
sharp རྫ་པ། 锋利  
sheepskin ཆ་བྱ། 羊皮  
sheets ཤག་བྲ། 纸条  
shift སྐྱར་འགུལ། 移动  
shocked དངངས་སྐྱག་ 震惊  
shocking དངངས་སྐྱག་སྐྱེས་པའི། 令人震惊的  
shop ཆང་ཁང། 商店  
shout བྱར་བྱག་པ། 喊叫  
shovel ཞམ། 铲  
shut བཅུག། 关闭  
sick ན་བ། སྐྱབ་པ། 生病的  
sigh དངན་པ་འཐེན་པ། 叹息  
silk དར་གྟི། 丝，绸  
sincerely གུས་འདུད་དང་བཅས། 真诚地  
siren ཉེན་བདེ། 警报  
skillful བྱང་དུ་རྒྱབ་པའི། 娴熟的  
slap འགམ་ཁྱུག་གཞུ་བ། 扇耳光  
slaughter བཤའ་བ། 屠杀  
slave ཐུན་གཡོག་ 奴隶  
sleepily གཉིད་སྤོབ་པ། 疲倦的  
sleeve ཐུ་བྱང་། 衣服袖子  
slim གཟུགས་བཅད་པ་མོ། 苗条  
slope ལ་ཐུར། 斜坡  
slowly དལ་བྱར། 缓慢地  
smoke (v/n) ཐ་མག་འཐེན་པ། དུ་བ། 抽烟，烟雾  
snack ཁ་ཟས་སྐྱབས་བདེ། སེལ་ཟས། 快餐，小吃  
sniff སྐྱམ་པ། 嗅，闻



snore ཟུར་བ་འཐེན་པ། 打鼾  
 snowman གངས་མི། 雪人  
 snuck འཇམ་ཤོས། 偷偷溜去  
 soak ལྷུས་བངས་པ། 湿透  
 sofa འབྲེལ་ཁྲི། 沙发  
 solution ཐག་གཅོད་བྱེད་ཐབས། 解决办法  
 solve ཐག་གཅོད་བྱེད་པ། 处理，解决  
 somewhat ལུང་ཙམ། 一些  
 sophisticated གཉོག་དྲ་ཅན་གྱི། 复杂的  
 sorrow རྒྱུ་བ། 悲伤  
 sorry དགོངས་དག་ལྟ་བུ། 对不起；抱歉  
 soup ལུ་ཐང་། ལུ་བ། 汤  
 spare ཁོས་སྐབས། 多余的  
 sparkle འོད་འཛེར་བ། 闪闪发光  
 sparkling འཛེར་མདངས་ཅན། 闪光  
 speechless ཁ་གྲག་ཕྱི་མེད་པར། 无言的  
 spin བསྐྱར། 旋转  
 spine སྐལ་ཚྭ། 脊椎  
 splash ལྷུ་མོགས་འཆའ་བ། 溅  
 squat ཙོག་པ། 蹲  
 squawk ཅ་ཙོར་སྒྲག་པ། 发出叫声  
 squeal གཙོར་སྐད་རིང་པོ་རྒྱག་པ། 尖叫  
 squint ཟེམ་ཟེམ་གྱིས་ཏྲ་བ། 眯眼看  
 stab གཙན་པ། 刺，戳  
 stagger ལྷུར་ལྷུར་དུ་འགྲོ་བ། 蹒跚的  
 stained ཇི་མས་ཤོས་པ། 沾污的，染污的  
 stairs སྐར། 楼梯  
 statue འབག་སྐུ། 塑像，雕像  
 steal རྒྱ་བ། 偷窃  
 steep བཀན་གཟར། 陡坡  
 stepfather བ་ཡེ། 继父  
 sticking རྫོ་བར་དུ། 突然地；突出的  
 stiff རྩུང་པོ། 硬的  
 stoop ལུག་ལུག་བྱེད་པ། 弯腰  
 storm དྲག་ཆར། 风暴  
 stove ཐབ་ཀ། 火炉  
 straight དང་པོ། 直的  
 straighten དང་མོར་བཟོ་བ། 挺直  
 straw སོག་མ་དང་འཇག་སྐ། 稻草

stretch བརྒྱང་བ། 伸开，展开  
 string རྒྱུད་པ། 线，细绳  
 stupid རྫེན་པའི། 愚蠢的  
 suddenly རྫོ་བར་དུ། 突然地  
 suicide རང་སྐྱོག་གཅོད་པ། 自杀  
 suit ལུབ་ཤོས། 西装  
 suitcase ཤོས་སྒྱུ། 衣箱  
 sunrise རྒྱ་རེངས། 日出  
 sunset ཉི་ལུ། 日落  
 supper དགོང་ཐ། 晚餐  
 surrender མགོ་བདུགས་པ། 投降  
 swallow མིད་པ། 吞，咽  
 sweating ལྷུ་ལྷུ་བགས་པ། 发汗  
 swell རྒྱངས་པ། 肿胀  
 swept འཕྱག་པ། 打扫  
 swollen རྒྱངས་པའི། 肿起的  
 taste སྔ་བ། 味道，尝  
 team དུ་ལག། 团队  
 teardrops མིག་ལྷ། 眼泪  
 tease ལུ་རེ་བྱེད་པ། 捉弄  
 telephone (v) ཁ་པར་གཏོང་བ། 打电话  
 tender མཉེན་མོ། 嫩的  
 tent ལུར། 帐篷  
 terrible ཏྲ་ཅང་མི་ལེགས་པའི། 糟糕的，极度的  
 textbook སྒྲ་དེ། 课本  
 thermos ཆ་དམ། 保温瓶  
 thick མཐུག་པོ། 厚  
 thirst སྐྱམ་པ། 口渴  
 thresh ཆར་མ་གཏུང་བ།  
 thresh ཆར་མ་རྩུང་བ། 打谷  
 threshing ground གཡུལ་གཙོག་པ། གཡུལ་ཀ 打(麦等);脱粒  
 thunder འབྲུག་སྒྲ། 打雷  
 ticket འཛིན་ཤོག། 票  
 tidy ལྷལ་དག་པའི། 整洁的  
 tight དམ་པོ། 紧的  
 tiny བ་མོ། 极小的  
 tipsy ལུ་རེ་ལུ་རེ། 有醉意的  
 tiresome ཐང་ཆད་དུ་འཇག་པའི། 使人疲惫的  
 tobacco ཐ་མག་གི་ལོ་མ། 烟草

tongue རྩེ 舌头  
 towel ལག་འཕྲིལ། 毛巾  
 tractor རྩོད་འཁོར། 拖拉机  
 traditional སྤལ་རྒྱུན་གྱི། 传统的  
 tragedy རྩོག་གཤམ། 悲剧  
 transportation རྒྱལ་འདྲེན། 运输  
 trash གད་སྒྲིགས། 废物，垃圾  
 treasure རིན་པོ་ཆེ། 珍藏  
 tremble རྒྱག་འདར། 颤抖  
 tuition སློབ་ལོན། 学费  
 ugly བཙོག་པ། 丑陋的  
 um འཇམ་མེད་ཚིག་ཀྱི་ཁྱད་པར། 犹豫的语气  
 unbearable གཞོད་མི་ཐུབ་པ། 无法忍受的  
 unbelievable ཡིད་ཆེས་མི་བྱུང་བའི། 难以置信的  
 uncomfortable ཁམས་མི་བདེ་བའི། 不舒服的  
 unkind རྒྱང་རྩེ་མེད་པའི། 无情的  
 unpredictable རྩོན་དཔག་བྱེད་མི་ཐུབ་པའི། 不可预测的  
 upset རེ་མས་སྒྱོ་བ། 难过  
 upward གྲེན་དུ། 向上的  
 urge (v) རྒྱལ་འདེབས་བྱེད་པ། 催  
 vacation ལྷང་གསེང་། 假期  
 vaguely ངས་གསལ་མེད་པར། 含糊地  
 vanish ཡལ་བ། 消失  
 vast མཐའ་ཡས་པའི། 广阔  
 veil གདོང་ཁེབས། 面纱(罩)  
 violent གདུག་རྩལ་ཅན། 暴力的  
 vividly གསོན་ཉམས་ཐན་པ། 生动地  
 vulture ཐུ་ཤྩ། 秃鹰  
 waft བསལ་རྒྱང་ཐིང་། 空中飘来的气味

wag གཡོ་བ། 摇摆  
 waist རྩོད་པ། 腰  
 warm རྩོན་མའི། 暖和的  
 warning བཙོག་སྒྲོག་པ། 警告  
 wash བཟུ་བ། 清洗  
 watchdog རྩོ་ཁྱེ། 看门狗  
 weak ཉམ་ཐག་པའི། 软软的  
 weary ཐང་ཆད་པ། 疲惫的  
 weather གནམ་གཤིས། 天气  
 wedding གཉེན་སྦྲོན། 婚礼  
 wet རྩོན་པ། 潮湿  
 wheel འཁོར་ལོ། (转经) 轮  
 whirled འཇུབ་མ་འཁོར། 回旋  
 whisper (v) ཤལ་ཤལ་སྒྲ་བ། 耳语  
 widow ཡུག་མོ། 寡妇  
 winnow རྒྱང་ལ་འཕྱར་བ། 扬谷  
 wipe འཕྲིད་པ། 擦去  
 woke གཉིད་ལས་སད་པ། 醒  
 wolf རྩུང་ཀེ། 狼  
 workmates ལས་ཀ་ལས་རྒྱལ། 同事  
 worried རེ་མས་ཁུར་བྱེད་པ། 担忧的  
 worriedly རེ་མས་ཁུར་ངང་། 焦急地  
 worry རེ་མས་སྒྲུག་བྱེད་པའི། 担心的  
 worse ཞན་པ། 更糟的  
 wow ཏ་ལས་པའི་རྒྱ་གདངས། 惊讶的语气  
 wrinkle (n) གཉེར་མ། 皱纹  
 zigzag གྲག་གྲག། 弯弯曲曲的  
 zombie རོ་ལང་། གདོན་འདྲེ། 僵尸  
 zoo སྒྲིག་ཆག་སྤང་ག། 动物园